

**MEASUREMENT
SENSITIVE**

**DOE-HDBK-1140-2001
FEBRUARY 2001**

DOE HANDBOOK

HUMAN FACTORS/ERGONOMICS HANDBOOK FOR THE DESIGN FOR EASE OF MAINTENANCE



**U.S. Department of Energy
Washington, D.C. 20585**

AREA HFAC

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A. Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

This document has been reproduced from the best available copy.

Available to DOE and DOE contractors from ES&H Technical Information Services,
U.S. Department of Energy, (800) 473-4375, fax: (301) 903-9823.

Available to the public from the U.S. Department of Commerce, Technology
Administration, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 22161;
(703) 605-6000.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

FOREWORD

The purpose of this handbook is to provide Department of Energy (DOE) contractors with information that can be used to design equipment and maintenance programs in order to reduce human errors and subsequently accidents and injuries due to human errors with maintenance activities. This handbook provides human factors good practices for design of equipment, systems, subsystems, and facilities, including support facilities and equipment, as well as, guidance for maintenance support equipment and procedures, maintenance aids, and maintenance programs. This handbook is part of a series of guides designed to enhance the guidelines set forth in DOE Orders 4330.4B, 420.1, and 5480.30 and DOE Guides 200.1, 420.1-1, 421, and 452.2A.

KEYWORDS

Facility
Maintenance design
Maintenance programs
Workshops

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

INTENTIONALLY BLANK

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword	iii
Table of contents	v
Tables	vii
Figures	viii
1.0 General	1
1.1 Introduction.....	1
1.2 Source documents	2
2.0 Design for maintainability	7
2.1 Unitization, modularization, and standardization	7
2.2 Unit layout, mounting, and configuring	10
2.3 Labeling, marking, and coding.....	21
2.4 Equipment accessibility	32
2.5 Controls, displays, and protective devices	36
2.6 Line and cable design.....	46
2.7 Connector design.....	57
2.8 Test and service point design	69
2.9 Test equipment design.....	78
2.10 Cover, case, and shield design	84
2.11 Fastener design and application	88
2.12 Drawer and rack design.....	103
2.13 Handle and grasp area design.....	106
2.14 Maintenance Safety	111
3.0 Workspace, storage, and workshop design	113
3.1 Workspace and operations in non-workshop areas	113
3.2 Facility design for work in radiological areas.....	121
3.3 Workshops.....	123
3.4 Radiological workshops	132
3.5 Other shop and office areas.....	134
3.6 Storage areas	135
4.0 Maintenance support equipment	139
4.1 General guidelines.....	139
4.2 Vehicles.....	139
4.3 Design principles for jacks.....	140
4.4 Cradles, cranes, hoists, padeyes	141
4.5 Elevators.....	145
4.6 Remote handling equipment	147
4.7 Hand tools	152
4.8 Hand tool use in hot environments.....	157
4.9 Stairs, ladders, and ramps.....	158
4.10 Platforms, catwalks, and shelters	164

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.11	Hatches.....	168
4.12	Communication equipment and procedures.....	170
5.0	Maintenance aids.....	175
5.1	General guidelines.....	175
5.2	Maintenance procedures.....	176
6.0	Developing maintenance programs	195
6.1	Preventive maintenance programs	195
6.2	Monitoring programs to detect functional failure	199
6.3	Servicing and adjustment	201
6.4	Maintenance information management systems	203
6.5	Software and program maintenance.....	204
6.6	Maintainability design as a part of system development	205
	Glossary.....	215

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Tables

Table 2.1.1	Advantages and disadvantages of using disposable modules	9
Table 2.4.1	Equipment access selection criteria, provides guidance for selecting equipment accesses	36
Table 2.5.1	Examples of valve color-coding schemes	41
Table 2.9.1	Advantages and disadvantages of types of test equipment	80
Table 2.13.1	Lifting criteria for handles.....	109
Table 3.1.	Specific task illumination requirements	131
Table 4.12.1	Intelligibility criteria for voice communication systems.....	173
Table 6.2.1	Sample portion of component failure modes effects analysis.....	200
Table 6.2.2	Example of classification of functional failures for selection of monitoring approaches.....	200
Table 6.3.1	Advantages and disadvantages of using servicing and adjusting approaches..	202

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figures**

Figure 2.1.1	A hypothetical equipment design maximizing unit independence.....	8
Figure 2.1.2	Unitization of a module for easy replacement of low reliability components	9
Figure 2.2.1	Example of slides with tilt action feature.....	12
Figure 2.2.2	Proper placement of components	13
Figure 2.2.3	Labeling and coding for panels or equipment.....	14
Figure 2.2.4	Design of hinged units.....	16
Figure 2.2.5	Error-free mounting designs.....	17
Figure 2.2.6	Example of fold-out construction.....	17
Figure 2.2.7	Bracing of hinged assemblies.....	18
Figure 2.2.8	Use of stands for component maintenance.....	18
Figure 2.2.9	Twist-to-lock type mounting bracket	19
Figure 2.2.10	Use of spring clamp mounts.....	20
Figure 2.3.1	Label composition	26
Figure 2.3.2	Label containing usable sequence of steps.....	26
Figure 2.3.3	Use of horizontal rather than vertical labeling	26
Figure 2.3.4	Use of arrows with narrow width-to-length ratios	27
Figure 2.3.5	Label positioning.....	28
Figure 2.3.6	Component labeling to preclude operating error.....	28
Figure 2.3.7	Label indicating control positions	29
Figure 2.3.8	Relating labels to controls and displays	29
Figure 2.3.9	Examples of warning labels	31
Figure 2.4.1	Poor working positions to be avoided	34
Figure 2.5.1	Locating internal controls.....	36
Figure 2.5.2	Remote controls.....	37
Figure 2.5.3	Controls with built in locking provisions.....	38
Figure 2.5.4	Tool actuated control.....	38
Figure 2.5.5	Covers for individual controls.....	39
Figure 2.5.6	Examples of recessed controls and panels and use of raised barriers	39
Figure 2.5.7	Valve control labels.....	40

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.5.8	Minimizing visual parallax.....	44
Figure 2.5.9	Oil level sight plug.....	44
Figure 2.6.1	Proper routing of cable to avoid sharp bends.....	47
Figure 2.6.2	Proper routing of cable to avoid walking on.....	48
Figure 2.6.3	Quick release, hinged and spring type clamps.....	49
Figure 2.6.4	Line and cable rack, winder, and hook.....	50
Figure 2.6.5	Line and cable reel cart.....	50
Figure 2.6.6	Line and cable mobile support.....	50
Figure 2.6.7	Preformed cables.....	51
Figure 2.6.8	Proper soldering of electrical wire.....	51
Figure 2.6.9	U-type lugs.....	52
Figure 2.6.10	Proper spacing of wire loads.....	52
Figure 2.6.11	Proper length of terminals and connections.....	52
Figure 2.6.12	Cable “fanning” for ease of maintenance.....	54
Figure 2.7.1	Example of plug-in connector.....	58
Figure 2.7.2	Example of proper attachment of crimp-on devices.....	59
Figure 2.7.3	Example of quick-disconnect connector.....	59
Figure 2.7.4	Example of crimp-on lug.....	59
Figure 2.7.5	Example of bolt assembly.....	60
Figure 2.7.6	Example of threaded connector.....	60
Figure 2.7.7	Plug and receptacle design and identification methods.....	63
Figure 2.7.8	Examples of quick-disconnect plugs.....	64
Figure 2.7.9	Example of extended alignment guides.....	64
Figure 2.7.10	Example of asymmetrical aligning pin arrangement.....	65
Figure 2.7.11	Proper arrangement of electrical connectors.....	65
Figure 2.7.12	Plug vs. pig-tailing connections.....	66
Figure 2.7.13	Examples of plugs with integral test point or test point adapter.....	66
Figure 2.7.14	Example of proper use of plugs with many pins.....	67
Figure 2.7.15	Example of externally visible gasket.....	68
Figure 2.8.1	Internal needle probe and self-sealing elastomer.....	71
Figure 2.8.2	Test probe guides.....	71

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.8.3	Proper test point grouping	73
Figure 2.8.4	Fan out cables for test points.....	73
Figure 2.8.5	Example of typical lubrication fittings.....	74
Figure 2.8.6	Example of well-designed oil filler cap	75
Figure 2.11.1	Example of proper and improper design of bolt fastener.....	90
Figure 2.11.2	Examples of external and internal grip heads	92
Figure 2.11.3	Examples of quick-release type fasteners	93
Figure 2.11.4	Example of effective latch catch fastener	94
Figure 2.11.5	Example of effective positioning of latches.....	94
Figure 2.11.6	Example of quick release clamp.....	95
Figure 2.11.7	Example of clamp requiring one hand operation	95
Figure 2.11.8	Example of captive fasteners.....	96
Figure 2.11.9	Examples of combination head bolts and screws and slotted hexagon screws	96
Figure 2.11.10	Example of deep-slotted screw heads	97
Figure 2.11.11	Example of appropriate bolt length.....	98
Figure 2.11.12	Example of self-sealing nut.....	99
Figure 2.11.13	Example of lock nut	99
Figure 2.11.14	Example of a clinch nut.....	99
Figure 2.11.15	Example of a floating nut.....	99
Figure 2.11.16	Example of an internal wrenching bolt and nut	100
Figure 2.11.17	Example of a chemical charge rivet.....	101
Figure 2.11.18	Example of gang-channeled nuts	101
Figure 2.11.19	Example of adequate size cotter key head	102
Figure 2.11.20	Example of retainer ring.....	102
Figure 2.11.21	Example of retainer chain	103
Figure 2.12.1	Examples of drawer and rack design.....	104
Figure 2.13.1	Minimum dimensions for different handle designs.....	107
Figure 2.13.2	Handle location for easy carrying	108
Figure 2.13.3	Handle location for covers and carrying units	108
Figure 2.13.4	Handle equipped with quick-release pins.....	109

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.13.5	Examples of handles for withdrawing printed circuit boards	110
Figure 2.13.6	Examples of miscellaneous uses for handles	111
Figure 3.1.1	Depth of work area.....	114
Figure 3.1.2	Mobile workspace dimensions.....	117
Figure 3.1.3	Fall protection devices	120
Figure 3.3.1	Standard design for stand-up benches.....	127
Figure 3.3.2	Podium type workbench design	127
Figure 3.3.3	Stand-sit stool.....	128
Figure 3.3.4	Sit-only workbench	129
Figure 3.3.5	Double-sided workbench design and workbench accessories	129
Figure 3.6.1	Drawer design features.....	137
Figure 3.6.2	Open shelf design feature.....	138
Figure 4.4.1	Hand-held hoist control box.....	144
Figure 4.4.2	Example of hoist lug and lock pin.....	145
Figure 4.6.1	Degrees of freedom of movement for manipulator arm and wrist assembly ...	148
Figure 4.6.2	Examples of manipulator hand configurations	150
Figure 4.7.1	Screwdriver for small-sized adjustments	154
Figure 4.7.2	Example of clip screwdriver	154
Figure 4.7.3	Example of push-type tool	155
Figure 4.7.4	Uses of straight and off-set screwdrivers.....	156
Figure 4.7.5	Example of clamping device.....	157
Figure 4.9.1	Preferred and critical angles for ladders, stair ladders, stairs, and ramps	159
Figure 4.9.2	Examples of use of safety screens behind open stairs and landings	1160
Figure 4.9.3	Example of hazard marking on ladder	161
Figure 4.9.4	Portable rung ladder dimensions.....	162
Figure 4.9.5	Step-ladder dimensions	163
Figure 4.10.1	Example of a catwalk.....	167
Figure 4.10.2	Critical dimensions for guardrails.....	168
Figure 4.11.1	Whole body access opening.....	169
Figure 4.11.2	Floor-mounted hatch	170
Figure 5.2.1	Example of purpose and scope section	178

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.2	Example of tools and supplies section	178
Figure 5.2.3	Example of precautions and limitations section.....	179
Figure 5.2.4	Example of a list of prerequisites.....	179
Figure 5.2.5	Example of highlighting.....	179
Figure 5.2.6	Example of subtask command technique.....	180
Figure 5.2.7	Numbered callouts	181
Figure 5.2.8	Direct callouts	181
Figure 5.2.9	Example of a caution statement made to stand out.....	181
Figure 5.2.10	Example of a double check list for an independent observer.....	183
Figure 5.2.11	Example of conditional statement in a step as a note.....	184
Figure 5.2.12	Example of a data table	185
Figure 5.2.13	Direct cue/response format	186
Figure 5.2.14	Running text with integrated art.....	187
Figure 5.2.15	Facing page format.....	188
Figure 5.2.16	Running text with foldout art format	189
Figure 5.2.17	Presenting actions as task steps.....	190
Figure 5.2.18	Exploded view drawing.....	191
Figure 5.2.19	Cutaway view drawings	192
Figure 6.1.1	Decision logic tree.....	198
Figure 6.5.1	Use of prone position overlay to evaluate required clearance	210

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

1.0 GENERAL

1.1 Introduction

Maintainability is that characteristic of design and installation that affects the amount of time and cost necessary to repair, test, calibrate, or adjust an item to a specified condition when using defined procedures and resources.

Design for maintainability has as a prime objective the design of systems, subsystems, equipment and facilities capable of being maintained in the least amount of time, at the lowest cost, and with a minimum expenditure of support resources. Attempts to achieve this objective have evolved into the engineering discipline of maintainability.

To realize the overall goal of maintainability, that is, to prevent failure or to restore a failed system or device to operational effectiveness easily and cost effectively, requires that maintainability and the associated human factors contributions be considered as part of the total design process. Maintainability must be designed into the system and equipment during the beginning stage of development to ensure that costly maintenance and/or redesign are avoided. Maintainability should complement operational requirements of a system. Design for maintainability is an evolutionary process that starts in the equipment concept stage and ends after the equipment has been built and tested.

This handbook provides design criteria for promoting system maintainability. These criteria are specifically compiled to assist in incorporating maintainability into new systems or for modification of existing facilities to increase their maintainability. They are not in themselves grounds for establishing the requirement to modify a facility. However they may be used to identify discrepancies with existing design criteria that may result in decreased system and facility maintainability.

This volume is an update and extension of an earlier DOE document, UCRL-15673, *Human Factors Design Guidelines for Maintainability of Department of Energy Nuclear Facilities*.

1.1.1 Scope

This standard establishes system maintainability design criteria for DOE systems, subsystems, equipment and facilities.

1.1.2 Purpose

This document is intended to ensure that DOE systems, subsystems, equipment, and facilities are designed to promote their maintainability. These guidelines are concerned with design features of DOE facilities that can potentially affect preventive and corrective maintenance of systems within DOE facilities. Maintenance includes inspecting, checking, troubleshooting, adjusting, replacing, repairing, and servicing activities. This handbook also addresses other factors that influence maintainability, such as repair and maintenance support facilities including hotshops, maintenance information, and various aspects of the environment and worker health and safety. This standard is to be applied to the system design of DOE systems, subsystems, equipment and facilities to:

- Reduce the need for and frequency of design-dictated maintenance.
- Reduce system/equipment down-time.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- Reduce design-dictated maintenance support costs.
- Limit maintenance personnel requirements.
- Reduce the potential for maintenance error.
- Assure use of standard procedures, equipment, and tools, when possible.

This standard serves as a reference and may be cited contractually in system specification and requirements to form a basis for evaluation of the human-machine interface.

1.1.3 Application

These standards should be applied to the design and retrofitting of all facilities, systems, subsystems and equipment by elements of the DOE. Unless otherwise stated in specific provisions, this standard is applicable for use by both men and women. Design should accommodate the range from the 5th percentile female to the 95th percentile male within the user population unless alternate upper and lower limits are specified by the DOE.

1.2 Source documents (for original DOE document, UCRL-15673, *Human Factors Design Guidelines for Maintainability of Department of Energy Nuclear Facilities*, of which this document represents an update and extension).

1. Altman, J.W., Marchese, A.C., & Marchiando, B.W., *Guide to design of mechanical equipment for maintainability*, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, ASD Technical Report 61-381(NTIS AD-269332), 1961.
2. Blanchard, B.S., & Lowery, E.E., *Maintainability: Principles and practices*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969.
3. Brynda, W.J., Lobner, P. R., Powell, R.W., & Straker, E.A. *Design guide for category I reactors light and heavy water cooled reactors*, Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York, NTIS BNL-50831-11, UC-80, 1978.
4. Choate, L.M., & Schmidt, T.R. *Sandia Laboratories radiation facilities*. Sandia Laboratories, Albuquerque, 1979.
5. Crawford, B.M., & Altman, J.W. Designing for maintainability, in H.P. Van Cott and R.G. Kinkade, *Human engineering guide to equipment design*, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1972.
6. Cunningham, C.E., & Cox, W. *Applied maintainability engineering*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1972.
7. *Designing for man's advances in control room operations*, EPRI Journal, July/August 1982, pp. 6-13.
8. *Engineering design handbook-maintainability guide for design*. U.S. Army Materiel Command, Washington, D.C., AMC Pamphlet 706-134 (AD-754 202), 1972.
9. Folley, J.D., & Altman, J.W. *Guide to design of electronic equipment for maintainability*, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, WADC-TR-56-218 (AD-101-729), 1956.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

10. Nuclear Regulatory Commission, *Guidelines for Control Room Design Reviews*, Washington, D.C., NUREG-0700, 1981.
11. Department of Defense, *Human engineering design criteria for military systems, equipment and facilities*, MIL-STD-1472F, 1998.
12. U.S. Army, *Human factors engineering design for Army materiel*, MIL-HBK-759C, 1995.
13. Department of Defense, *Maintainability program requirements (for systems and equipment)*, MIL-STD-470, 1966.
14. McCormick, E.J., & Sanders, M.S., *Human factors engineering and design* (5th ed.), McGraw-Hill, New York, 1982.
15. Morgan, C.T., Chapanis, A., Cook, J.S., & Lund, M.W., *Human engineering guide to equipment design*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1963.
16. Parker, J.F., Jr., & West, V.R., *Bioastronautics data book* (2nd ed.), National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C., 1973.
17. Pulliam, R., Price, H.E., Bongarra, J.P., Jr., Sawyer, C.R., & Kisner, R.A., *A methodology for allocating nuclear power plant control functions to human or automatic control*, Nuclear Regulatory Commission, Washington, D.C., NUREG/CR3331, 1983.
18. Rigby, L.V., & Cooper, J.I., *Problems and procedures in maintainability*, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, ASD Technical Note 61-126 (AD-273-108), 1961.
19. Rigby, L.V., Cooper, J.I., & Spickard, W.A. *Guide to integrated system design for maintainability* Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio, ASD Technical Report 61-424, 1961.
20. Seminars, J.L., *Human factors methods for assessing and enhancing power plant maintainability*, Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, EPRI-NP-2360, 1982.
21. Seminars, J.L., & Parsons, S. O., *Human factors review of power plant maintainability*, Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, EPRI-NP-1567, 1981.
22. Seminars, J.L., Parsons, S. O., Schmidt, W.J., Gonzalez, W.R., & Dove, L.E., *Human factors review of power plant maintainability*, Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, EPRI-NP-1567SY, 1980.
23. Seminars, J.L., Gonzalez, W.R., & Parsons, S. O. *Human factors review of nuclear power plant control room design*, Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, EPRI-NP-309, 1977.
24. Smith, D.J., & Babb, A.H., *Maintainability engineering*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1973.
25. Van Cott, H.P., & Kinkade, R.G., *Human engineering guide to equipment design*, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1972.
26. Woodson, W.E., *Human factors design handbook*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1981.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

27. Zahn, H.S. et al. *Developing maintainability for fusion power systems*, Department of Energy, Washington, D.C., NTIS COO-4184-8, 1979.

1.2.1 Additional Source documents used for this revision

1. Arnold, R.S., Slovin, M., and Wilde, N. *Do design records really benefit software maintenance*. IEEE conference on software maintenance, 1993, pp. 234 - 243.
2. Caldiera, G. *Impact of ISO 9000 on software maintenance*, IEEE conference on software maintenance, 1993, pp. 228 - 230.
3. Caparetz, M.A. and Munro, M. *Configuration management discipline*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1992, pp. 183 - 192.
4. Cherinka, C.M. Overstreet, L.M, Sparks, R. *Building an integrated software maintenance environment - from a maintainers perspective*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1993, pp. 31 - 40.
5. Department of Defense, *Human Engineering design criteria for military systems, equipment, and facilities.*, MIL-STD-1472F, 1998.
6. draft Department of Energy, *Human factors engineering design criteria: Volume I, general criteria*, DOE-HDBK-XXXX, 1994.
7. Garland, J.K. and Calliss, F.W. *Improved change tracking for software maintenance*, IEEE conference on software maintenance, 1991, pp. 32 - 41.
8. Gulla, B. *Improved maintenance support by multi-version visualizations*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1992, pp. 376 - 383.
9. Harjani, D.K. and Queille, J.P. *A process model for the maintenance of large space systems software*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1992, pp. 127 - 136.
10. Harrison, W. and Cook, C. *Insights on improving the maintenance process through software measurement*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1990, pp. 37 - 45.
11. Leung, H.K. and White, L. *A study of integration testing and software regression at the integration level*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, pp. 290 - 301.
12. Moubray, J. *Reliability centered maintenance*, Butterworth-Heinemann, Ltd., London, 1991.
13. National Aeronautics and Space Administration, *Man-System Integration Standards*, NASA-STD-3000, Vol. 1., 1987.
14. Pack, R.W. et. al., *Human engineering design guidelines for maintainability*, Electric Power Research Institute, Palo Alto, EPRI-NP-4350, 1985 .
15. Pigoski, T.M. and Cowden, C.A. *Software transition: experience and lessons learned*, IEEE conference on software maintenance, 1992, pp. 294 - 298.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

16. Pigoski, T.M. and Looney, C.S. *Software maintenance training: Transition experiences*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1993, 314 - 318.
17. Van Cott, H.P. and Kinkade, R.G. *Human Engineering Guide to Equipment Design*, Revised Edition, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1972.
18. Vollman, T. *Transitioning from development to maintenance*, IEEE Conference on software maintenance, 1990, pp. 189 - 199.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

INTENTIONALLY BLANK

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.0 DESIGN FOR MAINTAINABILITY

This section contains human factors guidance for designing systems, subsystems, equipment and facilities so that maintenance is easy and cost effective.

2.1 Unitization, modularization, and standardization

Unitization refers to separating equipment into physically and functionally distinct units to allow for easy removal and replacement. This type of equipment separation will permit division of maintenance responsibility, especially troubleshooting, among various maintenance levels. Modularization refers to unitized equipment in which the functional units making up a module are integrated and are removed or inserted as a unit.

2.1.1 Goals of unitization/modularization. Unit design/modularization of equipment should

- a. Maximize the efficiency and accuracy of on-line replacement of system components.
- b. Facilitate and minimize troubleshooting time at each level of maintenance activity.
- c. Allow test, checkout, troubleshooting, and repair procedures to be unit specific and structured to aid in identification of faulty units, then subunits, etc.
- d. Reduce down-time.
- e. Provide easy access to malfunctioning components.
- f. Allow for high degree of standardization.
- g. Minimize time and cost of maintenance training.
- h. Simplify new equipment design and shorten design time by using previously developed, standard "building blocks."

2.1.2 General principles for unitization/modularization design

2.1.2.1 Division of equipment into modules. Equipment should be divided into as many modules as are electrically and mechanically feasible in keeping with efficient use of space and overall equipment reliability.

2.1.2.2 Uniformity. All modules and component parts should be approximately uniform in basic size and shape for the best packaging, ease of replacement and minimizing spare-parts inventory.

2.1.2.3 Functional commonalty. A module should contain components that contribute to a single, common function rather than providing multiple, divergent functions.

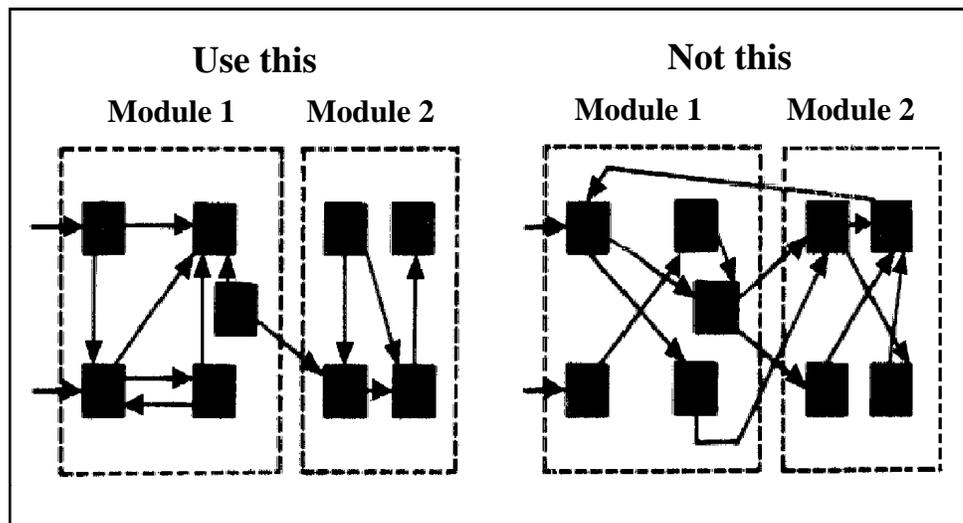
2.1.2.4 Operational testing. Modules and units should be designed to permit operational testing when removed and require little or no calibration after replacement.

2.1.2.4.1 Go-no-go testing. Testing should accept or reject each module or unit on a go-no-go basis.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.1.2.5 Functional independence of units. The physical separation of equipment into replaceable units should be matched with the functional design of the equipment to maximize the functional independence of units and minimize interaction between units (See Figure 2.1.1).

Figure 2.1.1. A hypothetical equipment design maximizing unit independence. (Ex. 1.1.1)



2.1.2.6 Subassembly or module removal. Where an assembly is made of two or more subassemblies or modules, where feasible, each subassembly should be able to be removed independently without removal of other subassemblies. This is particularly valuable when the various subassemblies have widely varying life expectancies.

2.1.2.7 Easy removal and replacement. All equipment should be designed so that rapid, safe and easy removal and replacement of malfunctioning components can be accomplished by one technician, unless this is structurally or functionally not feasible.

2.1.2.8 Module portability. Where possible, modules and units should be small and light enough for one person to handle or carry. The weight of removable units should not exceed 20.5 kg (45 lb). Units weighing more than 4.5 kg (10 lb) should have handles.

2.1.2.9 Independent testing. Where possible, each module should be capable of being checked independently. If adjustment is required, the module should be able to be adjusted separately from other modules.

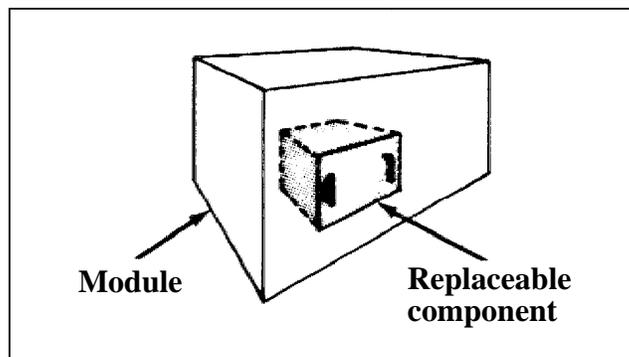
2.1.2.10 Controls and linkages. Controls and linkages should be designed so they can be easily disconnected from components to permit easy and safe removal and replacement.

2.1.2.11 Placement of low reliability components within module. Unitizing the module with the low reliability components removable from the exterior of the package should be considered if all components of a module except for one or two are reliable (See Figure 2.1.2).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.1.2.12 Replaceable multi-lead parts. Replaceable multi-lead parts such as relays and selector switches should be mounted with mechanical connectors such as plugs to avoid the necessity for unsoldering and resoldering when replacement is required.

Figure 2.1.2. Unitization of a module for easy replacement of low reliability components.



2.1.3 Disposable modules

2.1.3.1 Use of disposable modules. Disposable modules should be considered when maintenance is either impractical or costs more than replacement or when other advantages of using disposable modules outweighs their disadvantages as listed below in Table 2.1.1, Advantages and disadvantages of using disposable modules.

Table 2.1.1 Advantages and disadvantages of using disposable modules.

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Savings in repair time, tools, facilities, and manpower 2. Smaller, lighter, denser, simpler, more durable and more reliable design 3. Fewer types of spares and a one-way supply system, at least for the item 4. More concise and less difficult troubleshooting procedures 5. Use of sealing and potting techniques which further increase reliability 6. Improved standardization and interchangeability of modules and assemblies 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Increased supply burdens because modules must always be on hand 2. Reduction in failure maintenance data to aid design improvement 3. Excessive usage through excessive and/or erroneous replacement 4. Redesign problems and increased costs because such modules cannot be modified 5. Degraded performance and/or reliability as a result of production efforts to keep modules economical enough to justify disposal

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.1.3.2 Design and installation criteria for disposable modules. Disposable modules should be designed, manufactured, and installed to meet the following criteria

- a. Expensive parts are not thrown away for failure of inexpensive parts.
- b. Long-life parts are not discarded for failure of short-life parts.
- c. Low-cost and non-critical items are, in general, made disposable.
- d. Throw-away modules are encapsulated wherever practical.
- e. All encapsulated modules are designed for disposal at failure.
- f. Inexpensive modules are disposable wherever practical.
- g. The maintenance level of replaceable modules is clearly identified.
- h. Test procedures to be applied before disposal are clearly specified and provide clear and unequivocal results.
- i. The identification plate or marking contains the statement: "Dispose of at Failure."

2.1.3.3 Replacement module. When feasible, replacement module design and configuration should permit verification of operational status prior to installation without the need for disassembly.

2.1.4 Standardization. Standard parts, components, circuits, and modules should be used in all equipment that may be removed or replaced during the lifetime of the system. The number of different sizes of parts for equipment should be limited so that the inventory of spares and tools is minimized.

2.1.4.1 Use of standard commercial parts. Where available and subject to removal and replacement, standard commercial parts that meet system requirements should be used in all equipment so that the parts may be quickly exchanged or used in diverse applications. In particular, common hardware parts such as screws, bolts, nuts, and cotter pins should be replaceable by standard commercial parts without alteration.

2.1.4.2 Equipment specification. Where feasible, Equipment specification should require use of only standard and common tools and general-purpose test equipment.

2.1.4.3 Parts numbers. Parts should be identified in drawing by their parts numbers. All parts having the same manufacturers part number should be directly and completely interchangeable with respect to installation and performance.

2.1.4.4 De-energized. Units should be easily de-energized and confirmed for worker safety.

2.2 Unit layout, mounting and configuring,

Layout, mounting, and configuring should be designed to increase equipment and system maintainability. Layout refers to the general arrangement and placement of units and components within a system. Configuring refers to the particular method used to systematically package units or components. Mounting refers to a means of attaching and positioning components.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.2.1 Goals for layout, mounting and configuring. Effective layout, mounting, and configuring should:

- a. Satisfy unitization and modularization objectives.
- b. Minimize place-to-place movement of the technician during servicing, check-out, and troubleshooting.
- c. Be organized according to maintenance specialties so that maintenance performed by one specialist does not require removal or handling of equipment maintained by another specialist, especially where the equipment is so critical that it requires highly specialized skills.

2.2.2 Layout of units and components.

2.2.2.1 Minimize equipment damages and personnel injury. Equipment components should be located to minimize the possibility of equipment damage and personnel injury. Equipment should be configured with sufficient internal access and clearance space so that personnel injury is minimized due to cramped space and vulnerable components are not damaged during inspection, servicing, removal, and repair. (1.2.3.1.a and Chapter IV-C, Section 2.1, EPRI NP-4350)

2.2.2.1.1 Delicate components. Delicate components should be located where they will not be damaged while equipment is being worked on.

2.2.2.1.2 Contaminants. Components should be positioned so that oil, other fluids, and dirt are not likely to contaminate them.

2.2.2.1.3 High temperature parts. High temperature parts should be labeled, guarded or located such that personnel contact will not occur during operation or maintenance. Heat-producing equipment should be shielded so that technicians are not made uncomfortable.

2.2.2.1.4 High-current switching devices. High-current switching devices should be labeled and enclosed to protect personnel.

2.2.2.1.5 Discharging devices. Discharging devices such as shorting bars should be used to discharge high-voltage circuits and capacitors unless they discharge to 30 volts or less within 2 seconds after power removal.

2.2.2.1.6 Grounding equipment. Equipment and electrically operated tools should be designed so that all external parts and surfaces (except antenna and transmission line terminals) will be at ground potential.

2.2.2.1.7 Replaceable multi-lead parts. Replaceable multi-lead parts such as relays and selector switches should be mounted with mechanical connectors such as plugs to avoid the necessity for unsoldering and resoldering when replacement is required.

2.2.2.1.8 Use of insulation materials. Insulation materials such as rubber gloves, insulating blankets and matting, insulating sleeves, insulating line hose, insulated work platforms, and insulated tools should be used to separate maintenance personnel from potential electric, heat and cold hazards.

2.2.2.1.9 Internal controls. Internal controls should be located away from dangerous voltages or places where they might be accidentally bumped while performing other maintenance activities.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.2.2.1.10 Additional electrical safety design guidelines. Additional electrical safety design guidelines that should be followed include:

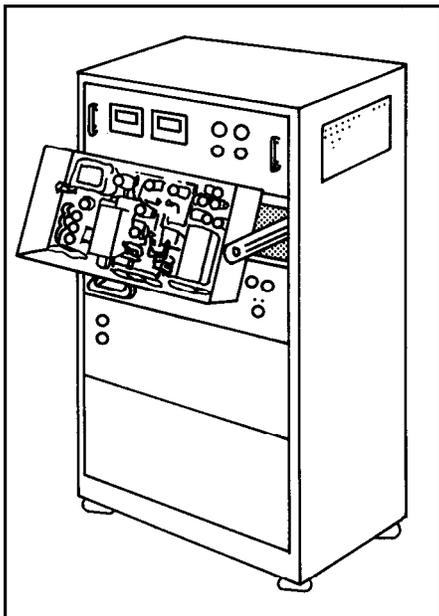
- a. Designing equipment to be free of falling or standing water.
- b. Where standing water may accumulate, placing electrical equipment and units on elevated pads.
- c. Providing storage in or near electrical equipment for safety-related tools (e.g. shorting bars).
- d. Locking, ventilating, and placing warning signs on doors to battery rooms as well as prominently displaying instructions for personnel evacuation, first aid (e.g. eye wash station).
- e. Following clear-cut plant equipment identification practices (color coding may be considered to aid in identification) to minimize misidentification errors such as opening a breaker for one circuit and subsequently proceeding to work on a different protected circuit.

2.2.2.1.11 Accidental activation. Components and units should be located so that their removal cannot cause accidental activation (or deactivation) of another unit or subsystem.

2.2.2.2 Check points. Check points, adjustment points, cable end connections, labels, and tools required should be placed in full view and reach of the technician.

2.2.2.3 Slides with tilt action features. Where access may be required to front and back (or top and bottom depending on mounting) slides with tilt action features should be considered (See Figure, 2.2.1, Example of slides with tilt action feature)

Figure 2.2.1. Example of slides with tilt action feature.



2.2.2.4 Mounted on top of supporting surface. Assemblies and components should be mounted on top of a supporting surface, not suspended underneath.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

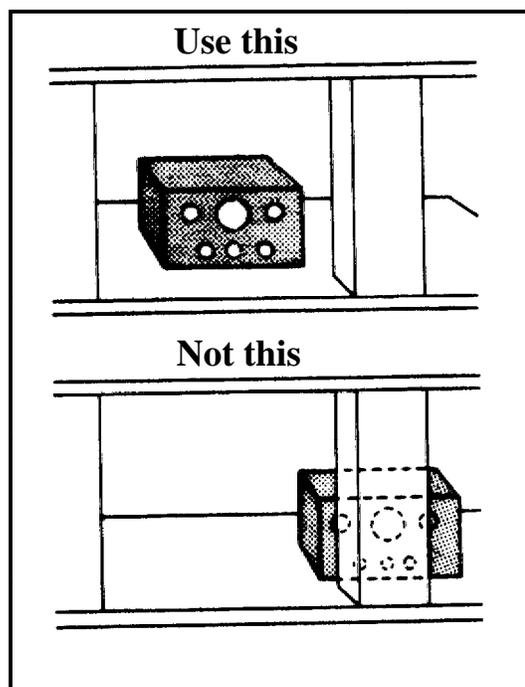
2.2.2.5 Easy access. Units should be located so other equipment does not have to be removed to gain access.

2.2.2.6 Protection from environmental factors. Equipment and systems should be sheltered or separated from environmental threats such as exposure to caustics, acids, moisture, and temperature extremes as appropriate or designed to survive and exist in their intended use environment.

2.2.2.7 Stacking. Parts and units should not be stacked e.g. they should be mounted in an orderly array on a “two-dimensional” surface, rather than stacked on one another. Subassemblies should not have to be removed to access other subassemblies within the equipment. If necessary, place the less frequently accessed unit in the rear or bottom.

2.2.2.8 Frames and structural members. Frames or structural members should not interfere with maintenance activities (See Figure 2.2.2, Proper placement of components).

Figure 2.2.2. Proper placement of components.



2.2.2.9 Components requiring frequent visual inspections. Components that require frequent visual inspection should be installed in positions where they can be easily seen without removing panels, covers, or other units.

2.2.2.10 Working level. Components to be serviced or repaired in position should be at the most favorable working level, i.e., between hip and shoulder height.

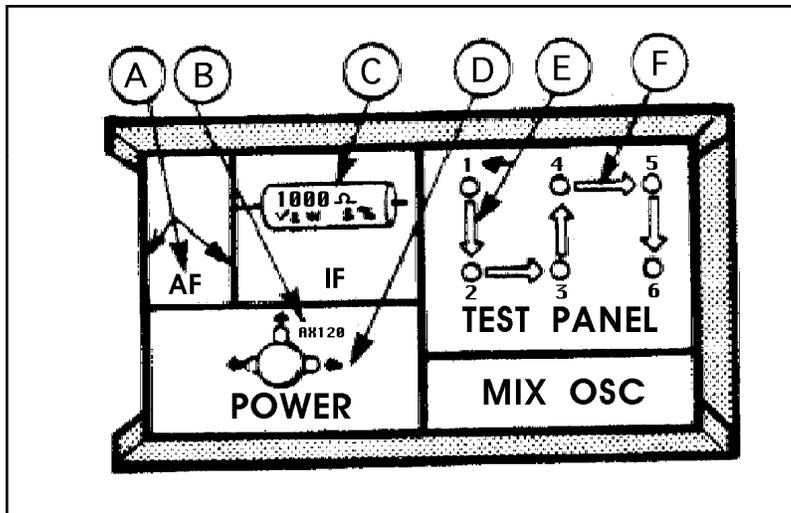
2.2.2.11 Similar items. Similar items should utilize a common mounting design and orientation within the unit. This mounting design should only allow interchange of items that are functionally interchangeable. Similar items which are not functionally interchangeable should be made distinguishable by labeling, color coding, marking, etc. (Section 5.9, MIL-STD-1472F)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.2.2.12 Uses of labels and codes for panels and equipment. Labels and codes should be provided on and within the system panels or equipment as required to: [Letters are keyed to Figure 2.2.3, Labeling and coding for panels or equipment]

- a. Outline and identify functional groups of equipment.
- b. Identify each item or part by name or common symbol.
- c. Identify the value and tolerances of parts such as resistors; this identification should be direct rather than in color code where possible.
- d. Identify each test or service point, and the sequence in which used.
- e. Indicate the direction of current or flow to aid systematic elimination of possibilities without continuous cross-reference to schematics.
- f. Provide "maintenance highways" to guide the technician through routine process. The following code has proven useful:
 - Black for line maintenance
 - Green for shop maintenance
 - Red for off site maintenance
 - Other codes as necessary.

Figure 2.2.3. Labeling and coding for panels or equipment.



2.2.2.12.1 Content of panel and equipment labels. Provisions should be made for the following information and instructions to appear on system panels and equipment when appropriate (see also Section 1.3, Hardware Identification for maintainability, of this document):

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- a. The weight of units over 20.41 kg (45 lbs).
- b. Warning and caution labels as necessary.
- c. Instruction plates to outline procedures not made obvious by design and to supply whatever information is necessary for troubleshooting and maintenance.
- d. The presentation and/or recording of historical data where practicable, particularly to:
 - Display periodic readings at test points to allow development of trends where these are fundamental to maintenance decisions.
 - Allow recording of replacement dates or other data necessary to replenishing or preventive maintenance.

2.2.2.12.2 Characteristics of labels and codes. Labels and codes used in system panels and equipment should:

- a. Consistently and unambiguously used throughout the system.
- b. Of such a nature as to be easily read and interpreted.
- c. Durable enough to withstand expected wear and environmental conditions.
- d. Coordinated and compatible with:
 - Codes and labels on related test and service equipment
 - Other coding and labeling within the system
 - Related job aids, instructions, handbooks, and manuals.

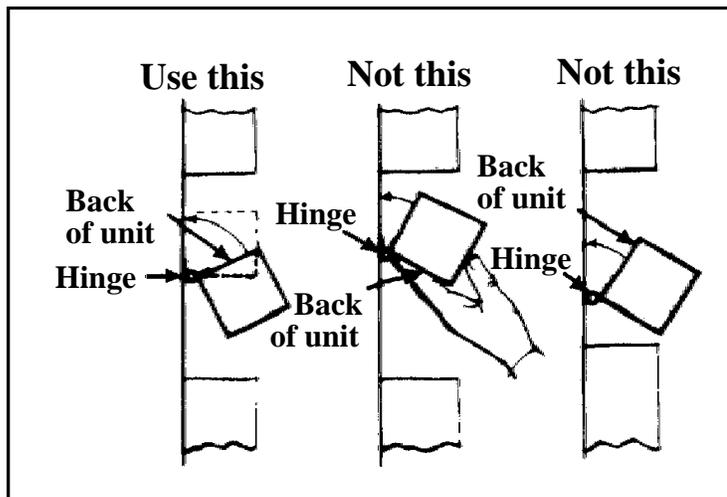
2.2.3 Mounting components.

2.2.3.1. Factors affecting mounting of components. Mounting of components should take the following factors into consideration:

- a. How often components will be removed for maintenance or replacement.
- b. The accessibility of other components which may be affected.
- c. The size and weight of components to be mounted.
- d. How much space will be required for access, removal, and replacement of the component or for using test equipment, tools, etc. (e.g. Small, hinge-mounted units, which must have access from the back, should be free to open their full distance and remain open without being held (See Figure 2.2.4, Design of hinged units).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.2.4. Design of hinged units.



- e. The required preventive maintenance for an installed component.

2.2.3.2 Design of hardware for mounting. Mounting fixtures, e.g., rollers, brackets, slide rails, should be designed so that:

- Only plugs and structural members are permanently attached to units. All other fixtures should be removable.
- Built-in fixtures to the chassis are either strong enough to withstand use over the life of the system or are removable.
- Mounting is compatible with the size and weight of the part to prevent breakage or damage from fatigue, under vibration, handling stress, and other stress causing operating conditions.
- All mounting hardware should be easily attached and removed by workers.

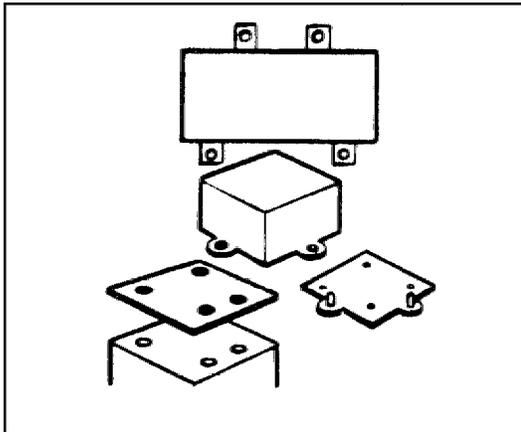
2.2.3.3 Design to prevent mis-mated or mis-aligned components. Design for mounting of components, modules, and parts should be such as to prevent their being inadvertently reversed, mis-mated, or mis-aligned during installation or replacement.

2.2.3.3.1 Techniques used to preclude mounting errors. Design should make errors physically impossible:

- Coding, labeling, or keying symmetrical components to indicate the proper orientation for mounting or installation.
- Providing mounting brackets which are asymmetrical, to prevent incorrect mounting, as below.
- Providing side alignment brackets which permit mounting in only one position,
- Providing asymmetrical mounting holes, studs, or alignment pins, as shown in Figure 2.2.5, Error free mounting designs.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.2.5. Error-free mounting designs.

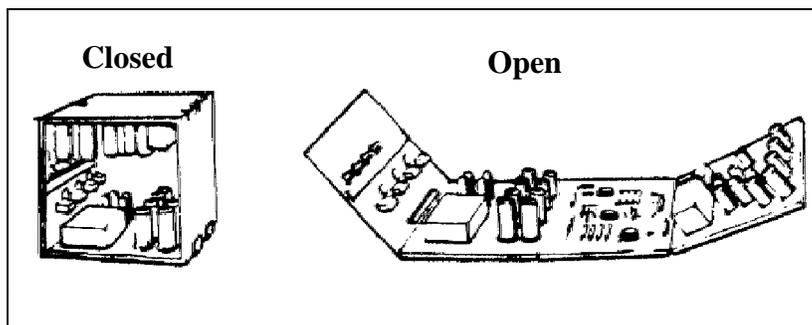


2.2.3.4 Interchangeable components. Components with the same form, function, value, and reliability and other requirements should be completely interchangeable throughout the system or related systems.

2.2.3.5 Similar components with different functional properties. Components of the same or similar form, but of different functional properties, should be readily identifiable, distinguishable, and not physically interchangeable.

2.2.3.6 Fold-out construction. This method of constructing subassemblies should be used whenever feasible. The parts and wiring should be positioned to prevent damage to them when opening and closing this assembly (See Figure 2.2.6, Example of fold-out construction).

Figure 2.2.6. Example of fold-out construction.



2.2.3.7 Braces. Braces or similar items should be provided to hold hinged assemblies in the "out" position while they are being worked on. Rests or stands should be provided to prevent damage to delicate parts. If feasible, the rests or stands should be a part of the basic chassis (See Figure 2.2.7, Bracing of hinged assemblies and Figure 2.2.8, Use of stands for component maintenance).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.2.7. Bracing of hinged assemblies.

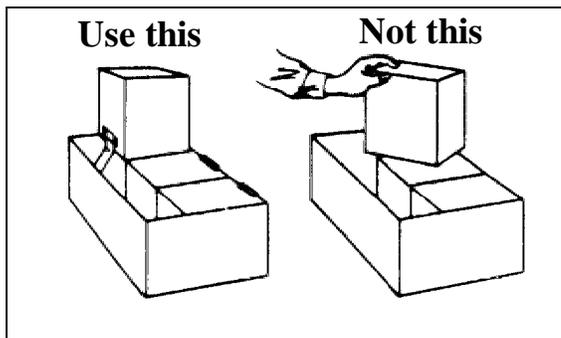
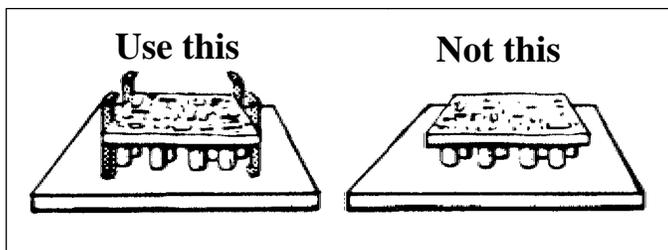


Figure 2.2.8. Use of stands for component maintenance.



2.2.3.8 Straps and brackets. Straps and brackets should be used:

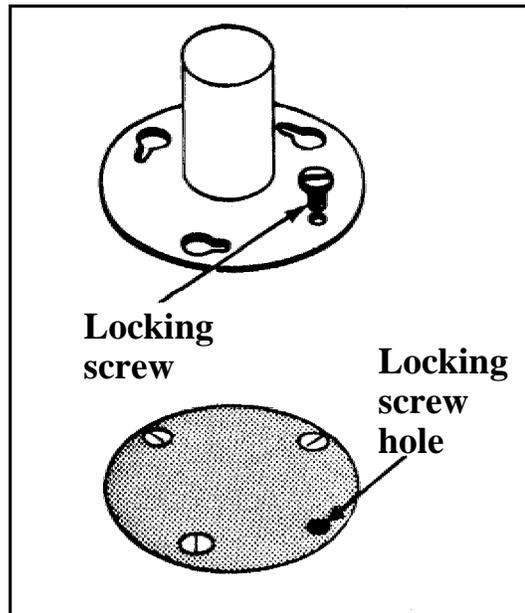
- a. As necessary for tying down large components.
- b. Particularly to support items mounted on the underside of assemblies.
- c. Instead of cantilever brackets for mounting parts.
- d. As necessary to prevent the mounted item from sliding or jumping out of position. "U" straps should only be used to "tie-down" components, not to support them.

2.2.3.8.1 Features of straps and brackets. Straps and brackets should be:

- a. Thick or rounded enough so they have no sharp edges.
- b. Shorter than mounted units to provide a clamping action.
- c. Twist- or push-to-lock mounting types for small components. Such brackets should be designed so that locking studs are visible when the component is in place, and locking screws or dimples are provided as necessary to ensure security of the mount (See Figure 2.2.9, Twist-to-lock type mounting bracket)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.2.9. Twist-to-lock type mounting bracket.



2.2.3.9 Shock mounts. Shock mounts should be used, as necessary, to:

- a. Eliminate vibration fluctuations in displays, markings, etc.
- b. Protect fragile or vibration-sensitive components and instruments.
- c. Control sources of high or dangerous noise and vibration.

2.2.3.10 Hinged bars. Hinged bars are useful for tying down and -permitting access to a number of small components at one time. Such bars should be padded or provided with springs as necessary to prevent damage to the items secured.

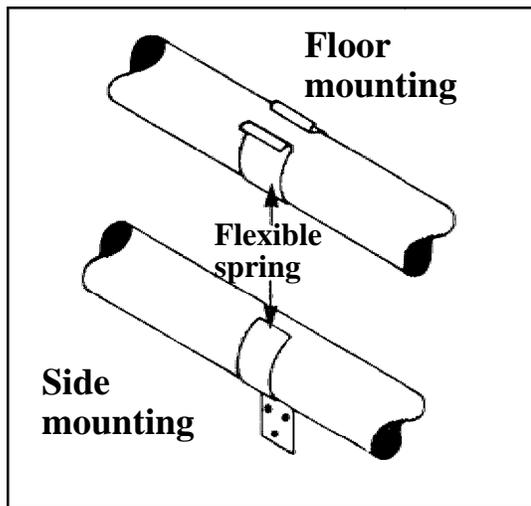
2.2.4.11 Flexible mounting. Where rigid mounting may result in damage to components, a device which permits some flexibility should be used. For example, a frequent cause of thread-stripping of "T" fittings is the rigid mounting of the fittings.

2.2.3.12 Blind mounting. Where blind mounting is required, the inaccessible side should be secured with mounts which will allow exceptionally easy mating and do not require access (such as friction lugs, torque and groove fittings, etc.)

2.2.3.13 Spring clamps. Spring clamps should be used to mount tubing, pipes, or wiring which may require frequent removal and replacement. For overhead mounting, a spring clamp similar to that used for floor mounting should be used, but a hinged locking latch should be provided over the open side of the clamp to prevent accidents (See Figure 2.2.10).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.2.10. Use of spring clamp mounts.



2.2.4 Configuring. The configuration of equipment, assemblies, and/or components should be based on logical flow, circuit logic, component relationships (in order of preference), or some combination of the foregoing.

2.2.4.1 Logical flow configuration. Components are placed so that they are arranged as they are functionally used; e.g. in a functionally logical order. In undertaking this method the following guidelines should be followed

- a. Circuits, parts, and components should be placed and located in an arrangement parallel to their functional relationships,
- b. Methods and subassemblies should be selected so that only single input and output checks are necessary to isolate a fault within an item.
- c. The unidirectional signal flow within a given piece of equipment is clearly indicated.

2.2.4.2 Circuit logic configuration. In this method, equipment is arranged as it would in an electrical logic flow (e.g. as the electron flows). In undertaking this method the following guidelines should be followed:

- a. All parts of a given circuit, or of logically or generally related groups of parts, should be located in a common area.
- b. Each circuit should be placed in a separate module.
- c. The circuit should consist of a single terminal board or plug-in type module when possible.
- d. Plug-in printed circuit boards should be structurally rigid, easily identified and easy to remove and replace.

2.2.4.3 Component configuration. Similar components have similar or adjoining places in the arrangement. In undertaking this method the following guidelines should be followed:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- a. All similar components should be found in one place on the equipment.
- b. Relays should be located in a single or small number of relay panels.
- c. Resistors, capacitors, etc. should be segregated in a minimum number of locations on subassemblies or terminal boards.
- d. Inexpensive components should be placed on separate, plug-in type boards mounted beneath the chassis to facilitate disposal at failure.
- e. Multiples of similar parts that are likely to require replacement about the same time should be grouped together.
- f. Components should be segregated based on significant variations in the maintenance tasks which are required. For example, items which must be cleaned by different methods (steam, gunk, solvent, etc.) should be packaged so cleaning is possible with minimal masking.

2.3 Labeling, marking, and coding

In addition to the guidelines listed below, labels, legends, placards, signs, markings, and codes should conform to the DOE standards and guidelines provided in NUREG 0700 (Rev 0) or MIL-STD-1472F.

2.3.1 Goals for labeling, marking, and coding. Labeling, marking and coding are used to

- a. Identify the purpose or function of specific units, parts, controls, displays, test points, etc.
- b. Present critical information for equipment maintenance procedures.
- c. Present safety information, (i.e., cautions and warnings which lead to prevention or avoidance of hazards to maintenance personnel or damage to equipment).

2.3.2 Hardware identification. Hardware identification (labels, legends, placards, signs, markings, codes, or combinations of these) should be provided whenever personnel must identify, interpret, follow procedures, or avoid hazards.

2.3.2.1 Identification characteristics. Identification characteristics should be consistent with factors such as

- a. Accuracy of identification required.
- b. Time available for recognition or other responses.
- c. Location and distance at which identification must be read.
- d. Level and color of illumination.
- e. Criticality of the function identified.
- f. Label design and identifying information used within and between systems.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.3.2.2 Multi-unit facilities. Where mistakes might occur, identifiers used in multi-unit facilities should be sufficiently distinctive to prevent confusing one unit with another.

2.3.2.3 Administrative control of hardware identification.

All labeling, marking, coding additions and modifications should be governed by administrative procedures.

2.3.2.3.1 Examination of labels and other identifiers. Periodic facility-wide surveillance checks should be made to ensure that all equipment and facilities are properly identified, and that informal labels added by operators and maintenance technicians are systematically replaced with accurate, easily read, high-contrast, permanent labels and tags.

2.3.2.3.2 Inspection of labels and identifiers by maintainers. Maintenance procedures should include a step to check for the availability of identification tags and labels as part of the system restoration process.

2.3.2.3.3 Identifier replacement subsequent to maintenance tasks. Quality control inspection procedures should include measures to ensure that identification tags and labels are replaced when necessary subsequent to maintenance tasks.

2.3.2.4 Equipment name plate. Equipment (except detailed assemblies and parts) should be identified with a securely attached, permanent, non-fading, oil-, gasoline-, and corrosion-resistant name plate. The name plate should be permanently and legibly marked with the following information:

- a. Contract order.
- b. Item name (noun first).
- c. Specification number.
- d. Manufacturer's part no. (or Government Standard Part No.).
- e. Serial no. (when available).
- f. Stock no. (when available).
- g. Manufacturer's name and address. Manufacturers' logos should be eliminated or removed if they interfere with identifying or interpreting equipment functions.

2.3.2.5 Other equipment descriptive information. Equipment labeling should also include pertinent information about its function, capacity, capabilities, limits, ranges, frequency, and current requirements. Weight, rpm, horsepower, and other basic information should be included.

2.3.2.6 Electrical assembly connections. Electrical assembly connections should be marked according to MIL-STD-195, or comparable industry standards.

2.3.2.7 Insulated wire. Insulated wire should be color- or number-coded per MIL-STD-681, or comparable industry standards.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.3.2.8 Color coding. For color coding using surface colors, no more than nine easily distinguishable colors should be used for color-normal and color-deficient observers. Recommended surface colors are listed.

<u>Color</u>	<u>Spec. No.</u>	<u>Color</u>	<u>Spec. No.</u>
Red	1110	Gray.....	1625
Orange	1210	Buff	1745
Yellow	1310	White.....	1755
Blue	10B 7/6	Black	1770
Purple	2715		

*From Fed. Spec. li-C-595 except for blue, which is from Munsell (1942).

2.3.2.9 Instruction plates. Instruction plates should describe or illustrate, the following as necessary

- a. Basic operating instructions.
- b. Calibration data and adjustment instruction.
- c. Simple wiring or fluid flow diagrams.
- d. Warning and safety precautions.
- e. Test point locations.
- f. Transistor and other pertinent electronic equipment.
- g. Valve settings.
- h. Type of fuels, oils, or greases applicable.
- i. Other similar data for routine preventive maintenance.

2.3.2.9.1 Visibility. Permanent instruction plates should be attached in an easily visible and suitable location.

2.3.2.10 Permanent pocket. Where required, a permanent pocket or similar device should be attached to equipment for containing various maintenance aids such as signal flow diagrams, diagnostic procedures, pictorial presentations, calibration and maintenance records.

2.3.2.11 Parts and reference designations. MIL-STD-16 should be used in the formation and application of alpha-numeric parts and reference designations. The unit numbering method should be used for all new equipment.

2.3.2.11.1 Location of parts and reference designations. Parts and reference designations should be located as follows

- a. Designation markings on equipment should be placed on or immediately adjacent to the part to which it pertains in a consistent manner.
- b. Small electrical parts (e.g., resistors, capacitors, terminals) affixed to mounting boards should be identified by marking on the boards.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Multiple terminals should be identified by labels on the component or adjacent chassis.
- d. Parts which protrude from an electronic chassis should be labeled on the wiring side.
- e. Terminals of transformers, relays, capacitors, and all socket-mounted items, except standard vacuum tubes, should be marked adjacent to each terminal.
- f. Receptacles for plugs, modules and units, and similar parts that are accessible from the top side should have both bottom and top side identification.
- g. Markings should be placed so that they are visible without removing parts.
- h. Markings should be oriented so that they can be read with the unit in the normal, installed position.

2.3.2.11.2 Marking and identifying parts. Parts should be marked or identified as follows:

- a. Parts should be identified by designations which refer to parts descriptions on a drawing or schematic.
- b. Wires, sockets, plugs, receptacles, and similar parts should carry designations from wiring diagrams prepared in accordance with the schematic diagrams.
- c. Replaceable mechanical parts should have standard designations.
- d. Semi-fixed electrical items (e.g., fuses, ferrule clip-mounted resistors) should carry the electrical rating in addition to the standard designation.
- e. Critical polarity and impedance ratings should be shown on items having these ratings.
- f. If an assembly is complex, a concise wiring diagram should be affixed to the unit.
- g. Markings should be accurate and sufficient to identify the referenced part.
- h. Markings should be permanent enough to last the life of the equipment.
- i. Stacked parts and modules should be marked so that they can be individually recognized.
- j. Individually enclosed or shielded parts should be identified on the outside of the enclosure.
- l. Fixed and removable parts of a plug-in assembly should be marked identically.
- m. Individual sections of dual parts should be clearly identified.

2.3.2.12 Labels. Labels are lettered indications of the name, identifying number, and function of equipment which should be affixed on or near the relevant equipment. It is usually better to over-label than under-label, especially in cases where equipment has operation and instruction manuals.

2.3.2.12.1 Label color combinations. Color combinations of printing and background should be provided which will maximize legibility. Best color combinations for labels, in descending order, are:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

-
- Blue on white
 - Black on yellow
 - Green on white
 - Black on white
 - Green on red
 - Red on yellow.

See 2.3.2.8 for recommended surface color specifications.

2.3.2.12.2 Color coding. If color coding of labels is necessary, colors should be selected on the basis of recognizable differences. The following colors are particularly suitable for surface coding because they are easily recognizable by both normal and color deficient persons.

<u>Color</u>	<u>FED-STD-595 Spec. No.</u>
Black	1770
White	1755
Yellow	1310
Blue	1OB 7/6

2.3.2.12.3 Label Design. Label design should conform to good label practices as outlined in MIL-STD-1472F section 5.5, Design of label characters should conform to the following:

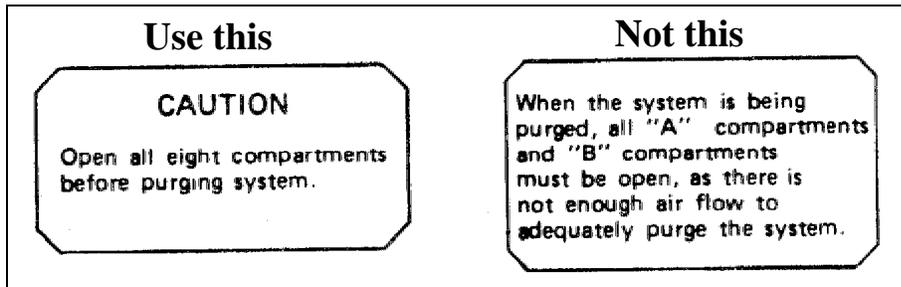
- a. Characters should be black where the ambient illumination is above 10 lux (0.9 ft.-c), black characters should be provided against a light background.
- b. Style of characters should be a san serif font, and large enough to provide at least 20 minutes of visual arc from the normal reading position.
- c. Should be in all capitals, except where lower case or punctuation marks are indigenous to the item being identified.
- d. Letter width should be $\frac{3}{5}$ to $\frac{4}{5}$ of the height except for single stroke characters (e.g. I or 1) which should be between $\frac{1}{10}$ and $\frac{1}{5}$ of the height.

2.3.2.12.4 Label composition. Label composition should conform to the following

- a. Labels should be brief yet explanatory. Brief, familiar words should be used.
- b. Abbreviations should be used only when known to all personnel. Key action words should be used instead of abbreviations when possible (See Figure 2.3.1, Label composition).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.3.1. Label Composition.



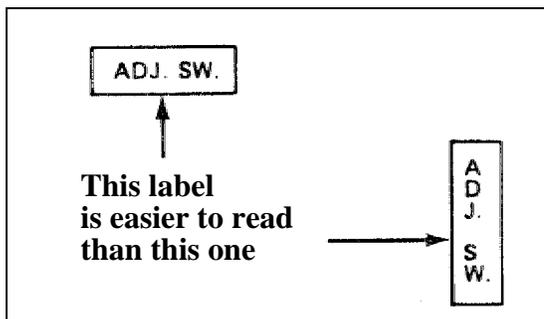
- c. Labels containing a number of steps to be performed sequentially should itemize the steps rather than present them in paragraph form (See Figure 2.3.2, Label containing usable sequence of steps).

Figure 2.3.2. Label containing usable sequence of step.

Use this	Not this
<p>ASSEMBLING INJECTOR TAPPING TOOL</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace defective part. 2. Install nut and washer on hand-tap shank. 3. Install rollpin on nut. 4. Check tapping tool for proper operation. 	<p>ASSEMBLING INJECTOR TAPPING TOOL</p> <p>First, replace the defective part from supply. Install nut and washer on hand-tap shank.</p> <p>Next, place the rollpin in the nut. Upon completion, check the tapping tool for proper operation.</p>

- d. Codes and labels on equipment should be consistent with instruction manuals and equipment parts catalogs.
- e. Labels should read horizontally rather than vertically (See Figure 2.3.3, Use of horizontal rather than vertical labeling).

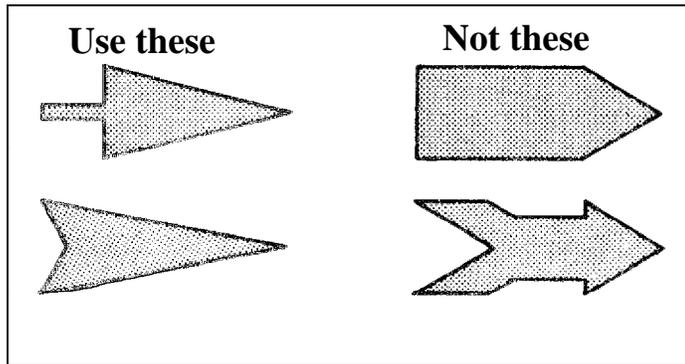
Figure 2.3.3. Use of Horizontal rather than Vertical Labeling.



DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- f. Arrows used in labels should be clearly recognizable and easily identifiable when read from a distance. It is easier to interpret the direction of arrows with sharp angles and clean lines from a distance than arrows which use wide angles and broader overall width-to-length ratios (See Figure 2.3.4, Use of arrows with narrow width-to-length ratios).

Figure 2.3.4. Use of arrows with narrow width-to-length ratios.



- g. Wording of labels should be chosen based on the operator's familiarity with them when possible. Common technical terms, if familiar to the maintenance technician, may be used as necessary. Abstract symbols (e.g., squares and Greek letters) should be used only if they are understood by all intended readers.

2.3.2.12.5 Label orientation. Labels should be oriented horizontally so that they may be read quickly from left to right. Vertical orientation should be used only when labels are not critical for personal safety or performance. When vertical labeling is used, (for example, for vertical meters, pipes, and conduits), the characters are be oriented vertically and read from top to bottom.

2.3.2.12.6 Location. Labels should be placed on or very near the items they identify to eliminate confusion with other items and labels.

- a. If there is a possibility of confusion, label brackets, association tie lines, or some other method to make the association more apparent should be used.
- b. Labels should be located so as not to obscure any other information needed by the operator.
- c. Controls and other panel elements should not obscure labels.
- d. Labels will not be placed where a control adjustment or position will obscure it.

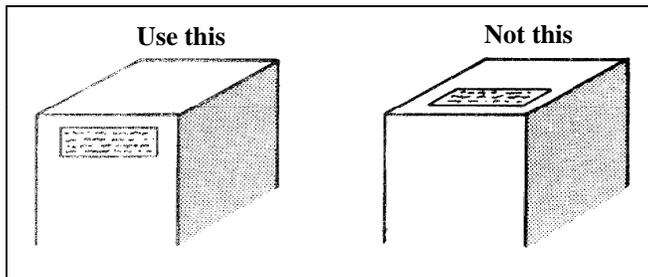
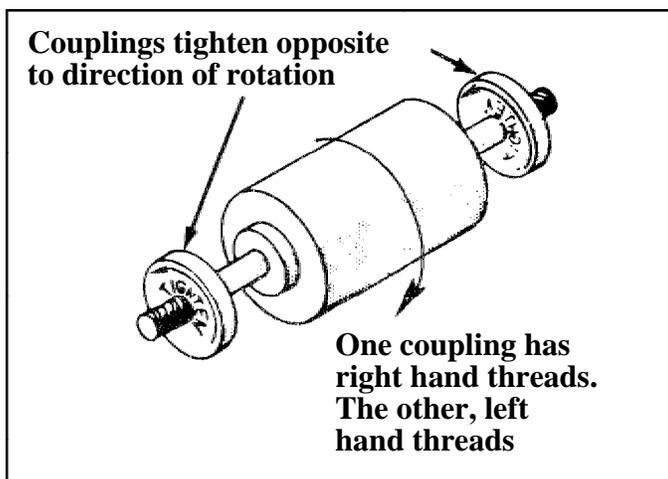
2.3.2.12.7 Location to avoid being obscured by grease, filings, dirt or moisture. Labels should be located so they will not be obscured by grease, filings, dirt, or moisture. Where a label may be particularly susceptible to being covered by material falling from above, it may be mounted vertically (See Figure 2.2.5, Label positioning).

2.3.2.12.8 Other considerations for label location. Other determinants of label location are as follows:

- a. Labels used on similar pieces of equipment should be placed in relatively a similar position.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- b. Labels should not be hidden from view, crowd each other, or obscure other useful information.
- c. Parts that look similar but are not physically interchangeable and cannot be physically, keyed should be labeled. Labels should be located on several sides of the part, if possible, with precautions about interchangeability or use-distinctive markings that correspond with markings or the assembly in which the part will be placed.
- d. Labels or other markings should be provided to indicate control positions. A rider may be attached to the shaft of a valve to indicate position. Labels may also include calibration data, where applicable (See Figure 2.3.6, Component labeling to preclude operator error and Figure 2.3.7 Label indicating control positions).
- e. Labels should be placed consistently in the same place in relation to the instrumentation on a panel. Labels normally should be placed above the controls and displays they describe. If a panel is above eye level, labels may be located below if the visibility is enhanced (See Figure 2.3.8, Relating labels to controls and displays).

Figure 2.3.5. Label positioning**Figure 2.3.6. Component labeling to preclude operating error.**

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.3.7. Label indicating control positions.

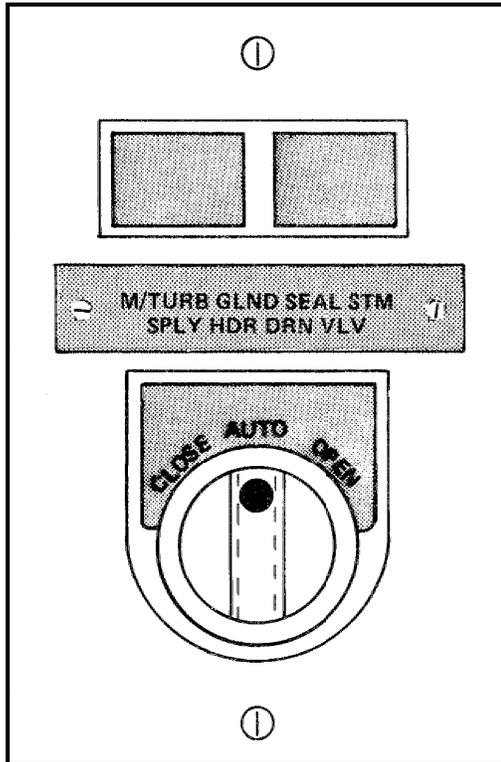
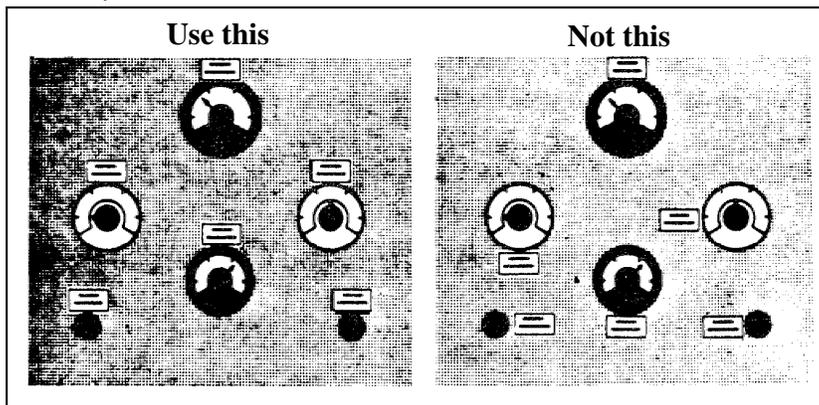


Figure 2.3.8. Relating labels to controls and displays (Ex. 1.3.11)



- f. Functionally grouped controls and displays should be identified by labels located above the functional groups which they identify. If a functional group is demarcated by a line, the label should be centered at the top of the group either in a break in the line, or just below the line. When colored pads are used, the label should be centered at the top within the pad area.

2.3.2.13 Mounting of labels. Labels should be affixed securely in place in a manner to prevent their loss, damage, slippage, or accidental removal; however, the means used to mount the labels should permit their removal when necessary without damaging the surface they were attached to. Tamperproof adhesives such as double-backed foam tape which fractures when the label is removed may be used to hinder

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

unauthorized repositioning of the labels. Labels on equipment should be attached to a structural member that is not removed during equipment servicing or routine maintenance.

2.3.2.14 Tags

2.3.2.14.1 Tag orientation. A tag is a labeling device attached to equipment for special considerations. Tags are often used to indicate some special equipment state, such as inoperability. To prevent personnel from picking them up and reorienting them, tags should be hung so that the information is displayed horizontally. Labeling both sides of a tag may also be used to decrease the need for user manipulation.

2.3.2.14.2 Tag mounting. Tags should be attached securely to equipment components by means of durable stranded stainless steel cable, clamps or chains. Plastic ties are not recommended since the plastic may become brittle and break

2.3.2.14.3 Attaching Temporary tags. In attaching temporary tags to components, care should be taken to ensure that the tag will not damage the components, interfere with operational features, or obscure necessary information such as other labels or controls or displays, unless the intent of the tag is to indicate inoperability.

2.3.2.15 Warning labels and placards

2.3.2.15.1 Warning labels and placards indicating necessary use of technical manual. Warning labels should be installed whenever a maintenance technician must consult a technical manual before working on the equipment.

2.3.2.15.2 Use of warning labels and placards. The following are examples of specific applications in which warning labels and placards should be used:

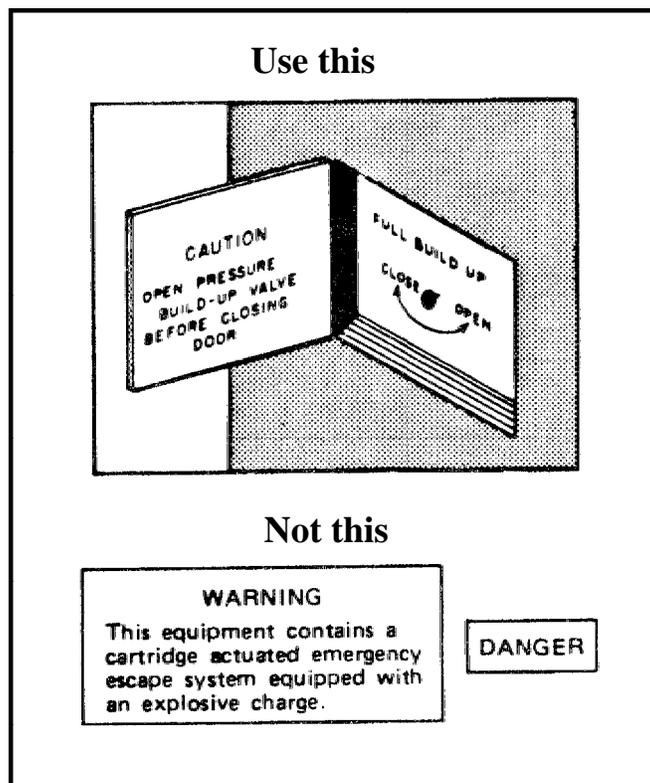
- a. **WARNING PLACARDS**-Warning placards should be mounted adjacent to any equipment which presents a hazard to personnel (e.g., from high voltage, heat, toxic vapors, explosion, ionizing radiation).
- b. **CENTER OF GRAVITY AND HEIGHT**-Where applicable, the center of gravity and the weight of equipment should be marked.
- c. **WEIGHT CAPACITY**-The weight capacity should be indicated on stands, hoists, lifts, jacks, and similar weight-bearing equipment to prevent overloading.
- d. **IDENTIFICATION OF PROTECTIVE ITEMS** - Operation and maintenance areas requiring special clothing, tools, or equipment (e.g., insulated shoes, gloves, suits, respirators) should be specifically and conspicuously identified.
- e. **"NO-STEP" MARKINGS**-These markings should be provided, when necessary, to prevent injury to personnel or damage to equipment.
- f. **ELECTRICAL LABELS**-All receptacles should be marked with their voltage, phase, and frequency characteristics as appropriate.
- g. **HAND GRASP AREAS**-Hand grasp areas should be conspicuously and unambiguously identified on equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- h. PIPE, HOSE, AND TUBE LINE IDENTIFICATION-Pipe, hose, and tube lines for liquids, gas, steam, etc. should be clearly and unambiguously coded for contents, pressure, heat, cold, or other specific hazardous properties. MIL-STD-1247 or comparable industry standards should be used for further guidance.
- i. LONG RUN CABLES, PLUMBING LINES, AND CONDUITS-These should be clearly identified or coded, not only at the terminal ends but also at periodic distances between ends to facilitate accurate tracing of lines.

2.3.2.15.3 Information content. Warning labels and placards should be as informative as possible given space constraints present (See Figure 2.3.9, Examples of warning labels).

Figure 2.3.9. Examples of warning labels.



2.3.2.15.4 Content of warning labels. Though content of warning labels will vary, they should inform the technician of (1.3.4.4.c):

- a. Why a dangerous condition exists.
- b. Places to avoid.
- c. Behavior to avoid.
- d. Sequence to follow to obviate the danger.
- e. Where to refer for more information.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- f. Precautions or procedures for hazards.
- g. What to do in case of injury.

2.3.2.15.5 High visibility warnings. High visibility warnings should be erected when personnel may be subjected to harmful noise or a sudden increase or decrease in pressure or exposure to radiation.

2.3.2.15.6 Tolerance or safety load limits. Tolerance or safety load limits of an apparatus should be permanently displayed.

2.3.2.15.7 Format of warning signs and placards. Safety signs should be formatted to command the observers attention and to follow standard coding conventions:

- a. Caution signs (alert for potential danger) should use black on yellow (though the word "caution is done with yellow characters on a black background).
- b. Warning signs (notice of actual danger) should use a white on red (most common or red on white except when those signs are already standardized for the environment, i.e., magenta and yellow, or black and yellow for radiation areas and black on yellow for construction areas).
- c. Safety equipment, including first aid supplies, should be identified using green letters and symbols on a white background or vice versa.
- d. Radiation hazards shall be identified using magenta characters and symbols on a yellow background.
- e. General advisory signs should be formed with white on black and black on white character background combinations.

Note: Except for facility specific situations, most required industrial safety signs are commercially available and they adhere to OSHA guidelines (19CFR1910). MIL-STD-1472F provides greater detail regarding format protocols for safety signs.

2.4 Equipment accessibility

Equipment accessibility refers to the relative ease with which an assembly or component can be reached for repair, replacement, or servicing. If the steps required are few and simple and the component can be reached by a suitably clothed and equipped user with applicable 5th and 95th percentile body dimensions, then the component is accessible. Accesses include entrance doors, apertures, inspection windows, and lubrication, pneumatic, and hydraulic servicing points.

Personnel workspace and accessibility are also covered in Section 3.1, Workspace and operations in non-workshop areas, of this document.

2.4.1 Goals of equipment accessibility. Accesses should be designed to make the repair or servicing operation as simple as possible. Accesses should provide:

- a. Sufficient clearance to use the tools needed to complete the task.
- b. Adequate space to permit convenient removal and replacement of components.
- c. Adequate visual exposure to the task area.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.4.2 Requirement for access. Access must be provided to all points, items which require or may require testing, servicing, adjusting, removal, replacement, or repair. In addition, formal access should be provided to equipment requiring maintenance must be provided to avoid use of expedient handholds and expedient footholds that may lead to equipment damage.

2.4.2.1 Rear access. Sliding, rotating or hinged equipment requiring rear access should be free to open or rotate their full distance and to remain in the open position without being supported by hand. Rear access should also be provided to plug connectors for test points, soldering and pin removal where connectors require such operations.

2.4.2.2 Accessibility priority. Components critical for system performance and safety which require rapid maintenance as well as those requiring the most frequent access should have the greatest ease of accessibility.

2.4.3. Facilitating access. Where possible and feasible, accessibility should be facilitated by:

- a. Using hinged or removable chassis.
- b. Designing major units and assemblies (especially engines, turbines, etc.) with removable housings to allow for complete inspections.
- c. Correlating the design of unit accessibility features with the accessibility requirements of the overall system.

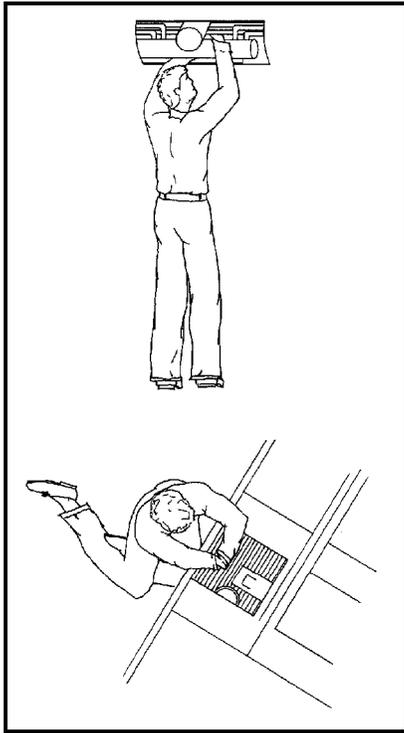
2.4.4 Obstruction. Structural members and permanently installed equipment should not visually or physically obstruct adjustment, servicing, removal of replaceable equipment or other required maintenance tasks. Panels, cases, and covers removed to access equipment should have the same accessibility as replaceable equipment.

2.4.5 Packaging elements to avoid equipment or system disassembly. Elements or equipment within systems should be packaged so that removal of one malfunctioning element does not involve disassembling or damaging adjacent components. Elements that may have to be removed from a system should be situated so that they can be moved without interference in straight horizontal and vertical paths.

2.4.6 Use of accesses. Accesses should be designed and located, covered, and fastened to avoid the need for removing components, wires, etc. to reach the item requiring maintenance. Items that require visual inspection (e.g., hydraulic reservoirs, gauges) should be located so they can be observed without the removal of panels or other components.

2.4.7 General maintenance clearance. A nominal 914 mm (36 in.) maintenance clearance should be provided around all major system components and piping of 610 mm (24 in.) diameter and larger for general clearance.

2.4.8 Comfortable working positions. Systems should be designed and routed so that maintenance personnel can maneuver themselves around the systems and assume comfortable working positions. Forcing maintainers to assume a working position close to the floor should be avoided. Platforms, catwalks, and scaffolds should be provided to prevent the technician from having to work overhead with outstretched arms (See also Figure 2.4.1)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.4.1. Poor working positions to be avoided.**

2.4.9 Routing systems to allow use of lifting and movement aids. Systems should be routed around access paths and envelopes such as overhead cranes, other movement paths and equipment-hatch removal envelopes. Overhead clearance should be a minimum of 2.13 m (7 ft) above the floor for passage of personnel and removal of equipment. Where applicable, sufficient clearance should be provided to permit the use of vehicular or other transportation aids near the system.

2.4.10 Easy equipment access. Locations of grease fittings, adjustment points, test points, isolation points, and fill-and drain points on equipment should be positioned for easy access. Sufficient clearance should be provided around connectors and other equipment components requiring manual manipulations to allow firm grasping for mating and de-mating. Heavy units that are to be pulled out of their installed position should be mounted on rollers or slides when feasible.

2.4.10.1 Lubrication. Configuration of equipment containing mechanical items requiring lubrication should permit both lubrication and checking of lubricant levels without disassembly.

- a. Extended fittings should be provided to lubricant ports that would not otherwise be readily accessible or visible.
- b. Permanently lubricated items for which the lubricant lasts the life of the items are excluded.
- c. A clear indication of completion of lube servicing should be provided to ensure proper servicing level.
- d. Lube fittings should be sized to prevent cross coupling with improper lube servicing devices.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.4.10.1.1 Labeling for lubrication. Where lubrication is required, type of lubricant and required frequency of lubrication should be specified on a label mounted at or near the lube port or grease fitting. A lubrication chart of permanent construction should be mounted at the operator station of the equipment; individual labels should not be required when the equipment has only one type of fitting and uses only one type of lubricant.

2.4.10.2 Lines and Cables

For guidelines related to line and cable access see Section 2.6, Line and cable design, in this document.

2.4.10.3 Fuses and circuit breakers. Fuses and circuit breakers should be readily accessible for removal, replacement, and resetting. The condition of fuses should be readily discernible without having to remove the fuse.

2.4.11 Determinants of type, shape location, and size of access. The type, shape, location, and size of accesses should be determined by thoroughly understanding

- a. Operational location, setting, and environment of the unit.
- b. Frequency with which the access must be entered.
- c. Maintenance functions to be performed through the access.
- d. Time requirements for the performance of these functions.
- e. Types of tools and accessories required by these functions.
- f. Work clearances required for performance of these functions.
- g. Type of clothing likely to be worn by the technician.
- h. Distance to which the technician must reach within the access.
- i. Visual requirements of the technician in performing the task.
- j. Configuration of items and elements, etc. behind the access.
- k. Mounting of items, units, and elements behind the access.
- l. Hazards involved in or related to use of the access.
- m. Size, shape, weight, and clearance requirements of logical combinations of humans, tools, units, etc. that must enter the access.

2.4.12 Type of equipment access

2.4.12.1 Exposing equipment for maintenance without coverings or housings. Equipment should be left exposed (without coverings or housings) for maintenance whenever permitted by structural, environmental, operational, and safety conditions. This pertains especially to test and service points, maintenance controls and displays, and rack mounted units.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.4.12.2 One cover. Access to inspect or replace an item should not require removal of more than one access cover.

2.4.12.3 Guidance for selecting type of equipment accesses.

Table 2.4.1, Equipment access selection criteria, provides guidance for selecting equipment accesses

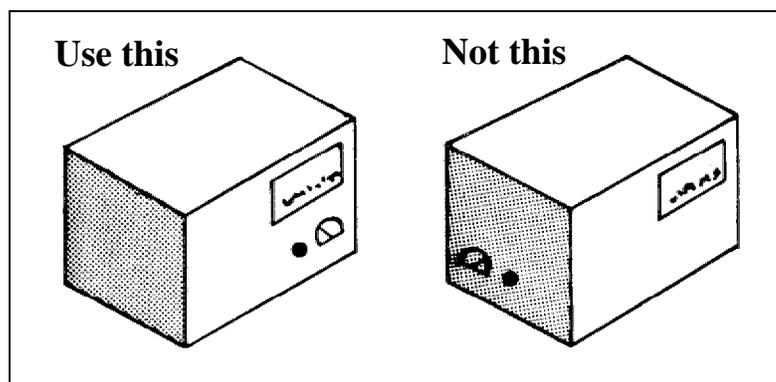
Desirability	For Physical Access	For Visual Inspection Only	For test and Service Equipment
Most Desirable	Opening with no Cover (Where contamination or other hazards are not present) or pullout shelves or drawers.	Opening with no cover	Opening with no cover
Desirable	Hinged door (if dirt, moisture, or other foreign materials must be kept out)	Plastic window (if dirt, moisture or other foreign materials must be kept out).	Spring-loaded sliding cap (if dirt, moisture or other foreign materials must be kept out)
Less Desirable	Removable panel with captive quick-opening fasteners (if there is not enough room for hinged door)	Break resistant glass (if plastic will not stand up under physical wear or contact with solvents)	
Least Desirable	Removable panel with smallest number of largest screws that will meet requirements (if needed for stress or safety reasons)	Cover plat with smallest number of largest screws that will meet requirements (if needed for stress or safety reasons)	Removable panel with smallest number of largest screws that will meet requirements (if needed for stress or safety reasons)

2.5 Controls, displays, and protective devices.

2.5.1 Maintenance controls

2.5.1.1 Location of internal controls. Internal controls should be located so the technician will be able to manipulate the control while at the same time observe its related display.

Figure 2.5.1. Locating internal controls.

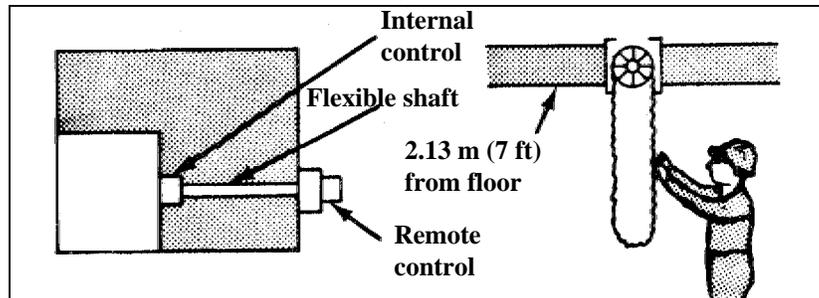


NOTE: This design should be used only when the access, as shown, does not interfere with normal operation of the equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.5.1.2 Use of remote control. If it is impractical to provide an access to an internally located control, a remote control should be provided (See also Figure 2.5.2, Remote controls).

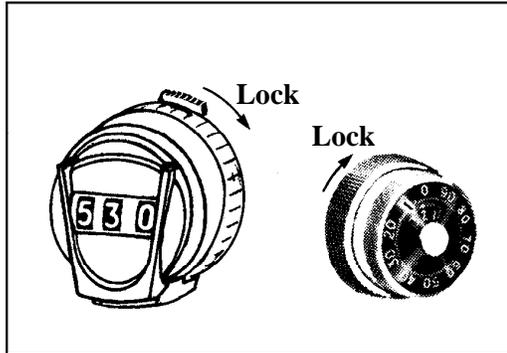
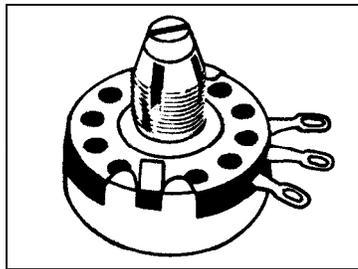
Figure 2.5.2. Remote controls.



2.5.1.3 Emergency controls. Emergency controls which may be operated by the maintainer should be located so that they may be activated from any position in the maintenance work area. If the work area is especially large and access to a single emergency control is difficult, duplicate controls should be provided.

2.5.1.4 Guarding sensitive controls and instrumentation. Sensitive controls and instrumentation should be protected from tampering or accidental movement. Techniques that are commonly used to provide varying degrees of protection are listed below:

- a. Enclosures such as cabinets or cages which may be locked where desirable to provide a relatively high level of protection. For highly critical instrument systems, alarms to discourage unauthorized entry may be used to provide a further level of protection.
- b. Barriers may be placed around vulnerable instrumentation and controls to provide a degree of protection while not impeding visual or reach access.
- c. Controls with built-in locking features may be provided to minimize tampering or accidental disturbance (See also Figure 2.5.3, Controls with built-in locking provisions).
- d. Wire-locked controls should be considered for highly critical control settings to prevent accidental disturbance or activation.
- e. Tool-actuated controls for calibration setting or other functions may be used to discourage tampering (See also Figure 2.5.4, Tool actuated control).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.5.3. Controls with built in locking provisions.****Figure 2.5.4. Tool actuated control.**

- f. Covers may be provided for controls that are vulnerable where accidental activation might have serious consequences (See also Figure 2.5.5, Covers for individual controls).
- g. Controls, instrument panels, and gauges may be recessed to prevent accidental damage or disturbance; conversely, raised barriers may be provided for these items (See also Figure 2.5.6, Examples of recessed controls and panels and use of raised barriers).
- h. Controls that offer resistance to easy movements may be used to avoid accidental activation
- i. Attention getting placards and labels may be used to alert personnel to the possibility of equipment damage or inadvertent control activation.
- j. Plant personnel and contractors should be trained to appreciate the significance and vulnerabilities of equipment and the consequences of equipment abuse.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.5.5. Covers for individual controls.

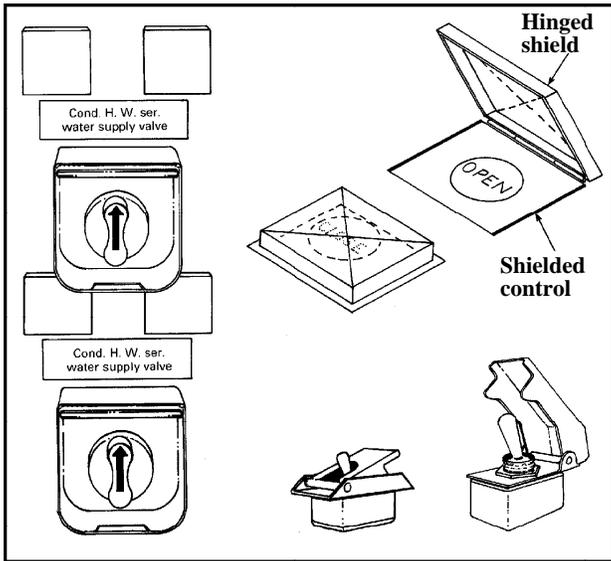
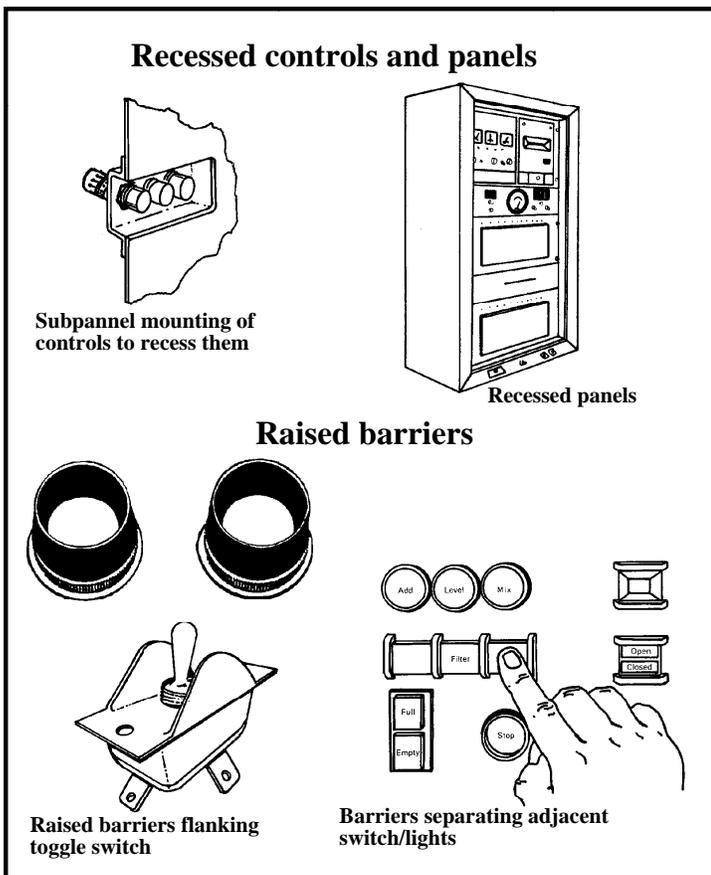


Figure 2.5.6. Examples of recessed controls and panels and use of raised barriers.



DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.5.1.5 Tool-operated controls. Tool-operated controls should be designed to be operated with hand tools from the technician's standard tool kit. If a special tool is required, it should be attached near the control which it operates.

2.5.1.6 Maintenance controls located on operator's panels. Maintenance controls located on operators' panels should be shielded with removable covers so as not to interfere with the operator's performance while remaining accessible to the maintenance technician.

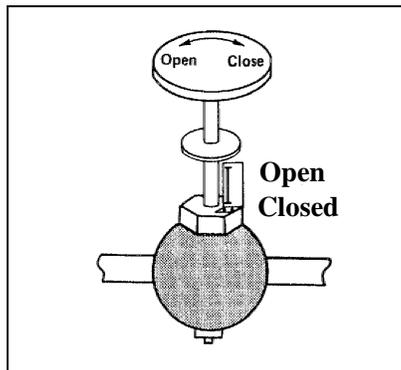
2.5.1.7 Valves

2.5.1.7.1 Tank and reservoir drain valves. Tank and reservoir drain valves should be located such that they may be removed from outside the tank or reservoir on the outside of the tank or reservoir so that the contents may be easily removed.

2.5.1.7.2 Direction of motion for rotary and hand wheel valve controls. Rotary and hand wheel valve controls should open the valve with a counterclockwise motion.

2.5.1.7.3 Labeling valve controls. Labels or other marking devices should be provided to clearly designate the position of a valve control. Valve controls should be provided with double-edged arrows showing the direction of operations; they should be labeled at each end to indicate the functional result. A rider may be attached to the shaft with marks to indicate the fully opened and fully closed positions.

Figure 2.5.7. Valve control labels.



2.5.1.7.4 Circular handles. When circular handles are used they should have crowns or should employ concave areas or convex projections along the periphery of the handle.

2.5.1.7.5 Color-coding valves. Valves should be color-coded by content of the substance which they control (For examples see Table 2.5.1, Examples of valve color coding schemes).

2.5.1.7.6 Location of safety valves. Safety valves should be located where they are readily accessible, but where pop-off action will not injure personnel or damage equipment.

2.5.1.7.7 Labeling drain cocks or valves. Drain cocks or valves should be clearly labeled to indicate open and closed positions, and the direction of movement required to open.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Table 2.5.1. Examples of valve color-coding schemes.

Contents	USAF Color
Fuel	Red
Water injection	Red-gray-red
Lubrication	Yellow
Hydraulic	Blue & yellow
Pneumatic	Orange & blue
Instrument air	Orange & gray
Coolant	Blue
Breathing oxygen	Green
Air conditioning	Brown & gray
Fire protection	Brown
De-icing	Gray
Compressed gasses	Orange
Electrical conduit	Brown & orange

Table 2.5.1. Examples of valve color-coding schemes (continued).

Contents	Navy color for valve handwheels & operating levers	Fed. Std 595 Color Number and Chip	Navy standard for interior pipe lines*
Steam	White	17886	A and B
Potable-water	Dark blue	15044	A and B
Nitrogen	Light gray	16376	A
H.P. air	Dark gray	16081	A
L.P. air	Tan	10324	A
Oxygen	Light green	14449	Light green
Salt water	Dark green	14062	A and B
Fuel oil	Yellow	13538	A
Lube oil	Yellow	13538	A
Fire protection	Red	11105	A
Foam discharge	Striped red/green	11105/14062	A
Gasoline	Yellow	13538	Yellow
Feedwater	Light Blue	15200	A and B
Hydraulic	Orange	12246	A
Freon	Dark purple	17100	A
Hydrogen	Chartreuse	23814	A
Sewage	Gold	17043	A

* Applies to valves on weather decks and interior piping only.

2.5.1.7.8 Drain cock motion. Drain cocks should always close with clockwise motion and open with counterclockwise motion.

2.5.1.8 Selecting and calibrating functionally related variables. If the maintenance task is one of selecting and calibrating several functionally related variables, a single control and a switching mechanism should be provided to allow simultaneous or sequential operation of each variable as desired.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.5.1.9.Circuit breaker controls. Toggle bat and legend switches may be used to actuate circuit breakers. Push-pull type switches should **not** be used

2.5.1.10 Calibration controls. Calibration or adjustment controls should be provided with appropriate stops to prevent damage to the system. Calibration controls should provide an indication (visual or audible) when stops are reached.(

2.5.1.11 Adjustment controls. Appropriate, readily discernible, real-time, feedback should be provided for all adjustment controls. Adjustment controls should be reversible without deadband, slop, time lag, response alteration, or striction.

2.5.2 Maintenance displays

2.5.2.1 Location. Displays should be located so they are easily visible to the technician and so that they may be read with the required degree of accuracy in the normal operating or servicing positions. Their placement should not require the maintainer to assume an uncomfortable, awkward, or unsafe position.

2.5.2.2 Combining operator/maintainer information. Operator and maintainer information should not be combined in a single display unless the information content and format are well suited to, and time compatible for, both users.

2.5.2.3 Maintenance displays located on operator's panel. If maintenance and operator displays must be located on the operator's panel, maintenance displays should be separated and grouped away from operator displays.

2.5.2.4 Transilluminated displays (simple indicator lights, legend lights, and transilluminated panel assemblies)

2.5.2.4.1 Lamp redundancy. Incandescent display lamps should incorporate filament redundancy or dual lamps. When one filament or bulb fails, the intensity of the light should decrease sufficiently to indicate the need for lamp replacement, but not so much as to degrade the ability to determine its status.

2.5.2.4.2 Lamp testing. When display lights using incandescent bulbs are installed on a control panel, a master light test control should be incorporated. This test control should not significantly lower the life or reliability of the lamps it is used to test. When applicable, the design should allow testing of all control panels at one time. Panels containing three or fewer lights may be designed for individual press-to-test bulb testing. Circuitry should be designed to test the operation of the total indicator circuit. If dark adaptation is a factor, a means for reducing total indicator light brightness during test operation should be provided. (Note LED indicator lights with 100,000 hours or longer mean time between failure do not require this lamp test capability.)

2.5.2.4.3 Lamp removal method. Where possible, lamps should be removable and replaceable from the front of the display panel. The procedure for lamp removal and replacement should not require the use of tools and should be easily and rapidly accomplished.

2.5.2.4.4 Lamp removal safety. Display circuit design should permit lamp removal and replacement while power is applied without causing failure of indicator circuit components, or without imposing personnel safety hazards.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.5.2.4.5 Display covers. If design of legend screen or display covers does not prevent inadvertent interchange, a means for checking the covers after installation should be provided to ensure that they are properly installed.

2.5.2.5 Instrumentation. Instrumentation should be designed for mounting and removal from a front panel.

2.5.2.6 Grouping. All maintenance displays which are relevant to a particular task should be grouped together and observable to the technician while performing the task.

2.5.2.7 Auditor warnings. Auditory as well as visual warnings should be provided to indicate malfunctions when maintenance must be performed in an area with a high degree of ambient illumination. Visual and auditory displays should operate on separate circuits.

2.5.2.8 Auditory warnings for critical malfunctions. If equipment is not regularly monitored an audio alarm should be provided to indicate malfunctions or conditions that would cause personnel injury or equipment damage. If auditory alarms would compromise covert operation of equipment, alerting should be through a visual display.

2.5.2.9 Power failure. Means of indicating power failure or interruption should be provided.

2.5.2.10 Indicating tripped circuit breaker. Means of indicating a "tripped circuit breaker" should be provided.

2.5.2.11 Out-of-tolerance. A display shall be provided to indicate when an equipment item has failed or is not operating within tolerance limits.

2.5.2.12 Instrument amplifiers. Instrument amplifiers should be located as close as possible to their indicators, which will require only one technician to make the needed calibrations.

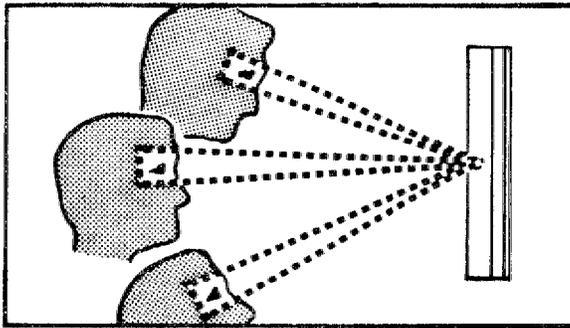
2.5.2.13 Liquid level indicators. Liquid level indicators should be located so that a minimum of visual parallax is present.

2.5.2.13.1 Use of liquid level indicators. Liquid level indicators should be used for oil tanks or similar reservoirs so that maintenance technicians can tell whether the reservoirs are filled properly.

2.5.2.13.2 Markings. Markings should be etched or painted on the glass of a liquid level indicator to eliminate the need for looking through the liquid to the scale.

2.5.2.14 Plug-in meters/displays. Plug-in meters/displays should be designed in such a way that they are visually accessible while performing a maintenance task (See also Figure 2.5.8, Minimizing visual parallax).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

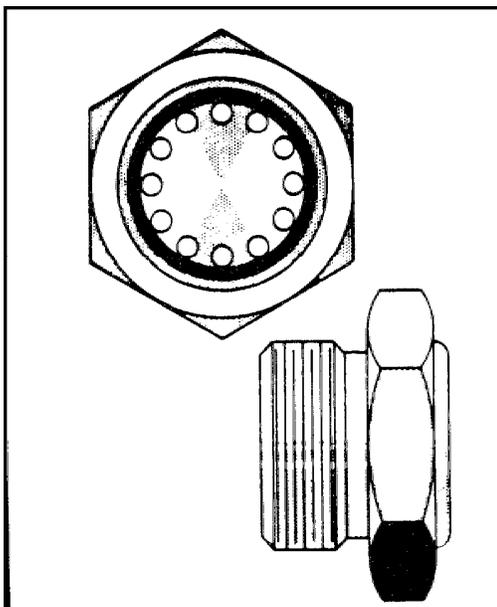
Figure 2.5.8. Minimizing visual parallax.

2.5.2.15 Direct-reading type indicators. Where possible, direct-reading type indicators should be used for hydraulic and other fluid tanks. For example, to facilitate quick visual inspection of the presence of oil in gear cases, oil level sight plugs may be used. This eliminates the need for dipsticks or fluid level gauges (See also Figure 2.5.9, Oil level sight plug).

2.5.2.16 Gauges and dipsticks

2.5.2.16.1 Gauges. Fluid level gauges are preferable to dipsticks because they allow rapid, immediate, and continuous inspection, and thus remove requirements for inspection tables.

2.5.2.16.2 Calibration units. If used, gauges or dipsticks should be calibrated in terms of functional units (quarts, pounds, gallons, etc.), rather than in general terms such as dry, low, add, etc. Where applicable, to avoid computational errors in weight and balance from a volumetric figure for fuel, a gauge should be provided which measures the weight of fuel in pounds.

Figure 2.5.9. Oil level sight plug.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.5.2.16.3 Accessibility. If used, gauges or dipsticks should be immediately accessible.

2.8.2.16.4 Readability. Gauges or dipsticks should be quickly and easily read, i.e., there should be good contrast between the finish of the gauge and the fluid.

2.5.2.16.5 Guidance on acceptable levels. Fluid level indicators or labels should provide guidance on acceptable levels. Information about the effect on level of equipment operating condition (off, on, hot, cold, etc.) should be provided.

2.5.2.16.6 Zone banding. Zone banding e.g. use of pattern or color coding to show a critical range(s) on the scale should be considered when certain operating conditions should normally fall within this range

2.5.2.16.7 Gauges for condition of equipment. The lubrication system of an assembly should be provided with gauges necessary to keep the maintenance technician fully informed about the condition of the equipment, e.g., oil temperature and inlet and outlet pressure gauges should be provided.

2.5.2.16.8 Oil dipsticks. Oil dipsticks should be designed to:

- a. Provide contrast between the finish of the dipstick gauge and clear thin oil.
- b. Make interpolation of liquid level observations unnecessary by graduating the dipstick in increments.

2.5.2.17 Magnetic chip detectors. Magnetic chip detectors should be provided in lube systems rather than electrical detectors since the latter create maintenance problems.

2.5.3 Protective devices.

2.5.3.1 Operation. Protective devices such as vibration switches which shut down the equipment when vibration exceeds a set value may be used to reduce the consequence of system or equipment failure. Protective devices work in one of five ways:

- Draw attention to abnormal conditions (such as warning lights and audible alarms),
- Shut down equipment in event of failure,
- Eliminate or relieve abnormal conditions which follow a failure (safety valves, rupture disks),
- Take over from a device or equipment which has failed (redundant structural components), or
- Prevent dangerous situations from arising (guards)

2.5.3.2 Fail safe protective devices. Other things being equal, protective devices that are fail safe (e.g. where their failure is evident before what they are designed to protect against occurs) are preferred to those where failure is hidden.

2.5.3.3 Hidden malfunction. Functional reliability of protective devices where function is not evident can be increased by adding another device where necessary to make failure evident (for example, by using an alarm for a smoke detector to indicate that the battery is low), by using a more reliable protective device, by preventive or fault finding maintenance (for example, daily activating a testing circuit on a control panel to check to see that the alarm lights are working), or by using more than one protective device (e.g., redundancy).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.5.3.4 Repair of protective devices. Where failure of the protected equipment or system may have serious consequences, when the protective device is being repaired the protected function should be shut down or alternative protection should be provided.

2.6 Line and cable design

Lines refer to any single length of pipe, wire, or tubing. Cables refer to a number of lines bound together within a single, permanent sheath.

2.6.1 General design objectives. Lines and cables should be selected, designed, bound, mounted, and routed to

- a. Preclude wearout, breakage, or damage.
- b. Facilitate logical and efficient divisions of maintenance responsibilities.
- c. Allow for quick and easy:
 - Troubleshooting, testing, checking and isolation of malfunctions.
 - Tracing, removal, repair, and replacement.
 - Connecting and disconnecting.

2.6.2 Standard sizes and varieties. Lines and cables should be designed to minimize the number of:

- a. Types and varieties of lines and cables.
- b. Different lengths of identical lines or cables.
- c. Related connectors, fittings, and fixtures.

2.6.3 Shortest allowable runs. Lines and cables should be routed over the shortest runs allowable by lead, mounting, and other requirements.

2.6.4. Routing and accessibility.

2.6.4.1 Accessibility. Lines and cables should be routed and mounted to be accessible:

- a. With minimum disassembly required or removal of other equipment or items.
- b. At connect, test, mount, and splice points.
- c. For complete removal and replacement in case of damage.

2.6.4.2 Clearance space around large piping. A nominal 914 mm (36 in.) clearance space should be provided around piping 610 mm (24 in.) in diameter or larger.

2.6.4.2.1 Accessibility in cable trays. Wire harness and fluid lines mounted in cable trays should be located for ready access.

2.6.4.3 Valves, thermowells, flow meters, and other instrumentation on piping runs. Components such as valves, thermowells, flow meters, and other instrumentation on piping runs should be reachable

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

and within visual limits for inspection purposes. Due to size and weight, valves with diameters equal to or greater than 305 mm (12 in.) should be located as close to the floor as reasonable. Where it is necessary to place smaller valves or instrumentation in the overhead, formal means of access such as platforms and catwalks should be provided.

2.6.4.4 Placement of components for cables or piping runs. In general, components with the highest reliability should be placed highest in the overhead. Components which impact availability very little should be placed next highest in the overhead. Components impacting availability most or requiring frequent maintenance or inspection should be placed 0.91 - 1.52 m (3 - 5 ft) above floor level.

2.6.4.5 Welds. Sufficient space should be provided around piping and component welds to perform required examinations.

2.6.4.6 Routing for access around pumps and valves. Piping should be routed to leave access around pumps and valves for periodic operation tests.

2.6.4.7 Cables or lines routed through walls. Cables or lines that must be routed through walls should be designed for easy installation and removal without cutting and slicing lines.

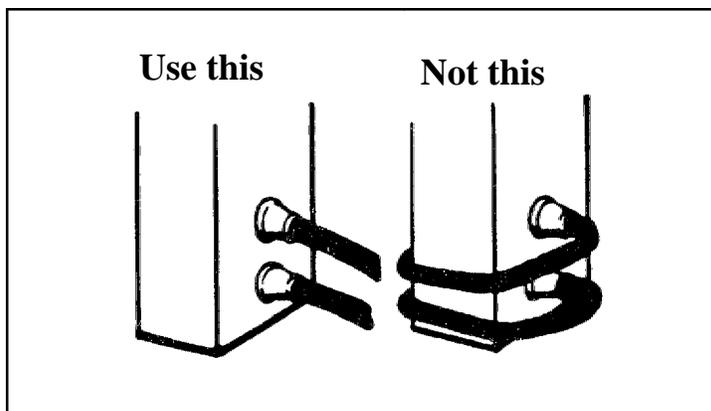
2.6.4.8 High pressure or high voltage lines and cables. High pressure or high voltage lines and cables should be routed away from sensitive equipment, high temperature sources, work areas, controls, etc. where personnel may require access.

2.6.4.9 Remote switches or valves. Lines and cables should not be routed through remote switches or valves which may be inadvertently used while work is being performed on equipment.

2.6.4.10 Routing to avoid mishandling and obstruction. Lines and cables should be routed so they cannot be mishandled or obstructed (For example, see Figure 2.6.1, Proper routing of cable to avoid sharp bends).

- a. Used for hand-/footholds.
- b. Bent or sharply twisted.

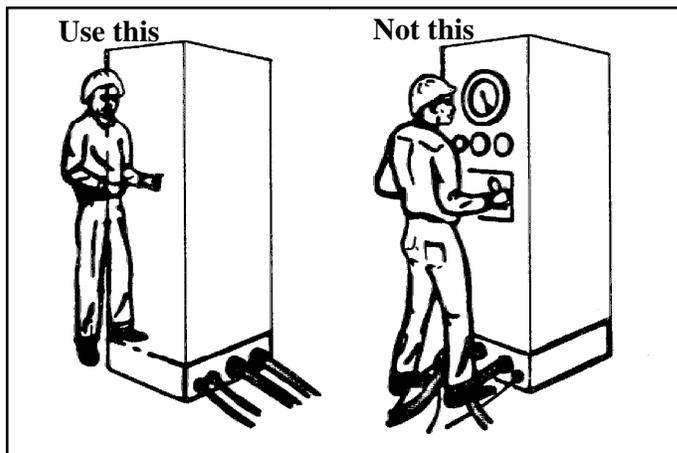
Figure 2.6.1. Proper routing of cable to avoid sharp bends.



- c. Walked (or tripped) on or rolled over by heavy traffic.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.6.2. Proper routing of cable to avoid walking on.



- d. Pinched or stressed by loose objects, doors, lids, covers, sliding drawers, or roll-out racks.
- e. Obstructing visual or physical access to equipment for operation or maintenance.

2.6.4.11 Cable protection. When cables must pass over sharp edges, insulation should be protected from fraying or other damage by grommets or equivalent means.

2.6.4.12 Piping systems in radioactive areas. Piping systems in radioactive areas should be routed to accommodate workers physically encumbered by protective garments, air bottles, and face masks or plastic hoods.

2.6.4.12.1 Use of reach rods. Reach rods should be used only in radioactive areas where direct access to the valves will result in exposure to radiation or other adverse environmental factors significantly exceeding that obtained through manual operation.

2.6.5 Mounting. Lines and cables should be mounted so that:

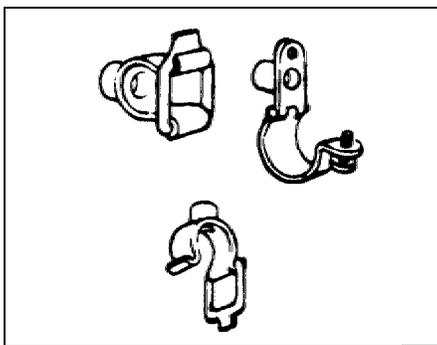
- a. They will not interfere with other maintenance operations.
- b. They will not chafe or flex excessively under predicted conditions of use.
- c. Protection from metal edges is provided by grommets or pads.
- d. They are securely anchored to the chassis by clamps or plates.
- e. They are not terminated or mounted on the front of cabinets or control-display panels (test cables excepted).

2.6.5.1 Clamps or mounting plates. Unless wiring ducts or conduits are used, mechanically (not adhesively) mounted cable clamps or plates should be provided to ensure correct routing of electrical cables, to facilitate the mating of cables with their associated equipment, and to prevent chaffing due to contact with adjacent structures. Clamps or mounting plates used for mounting should:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

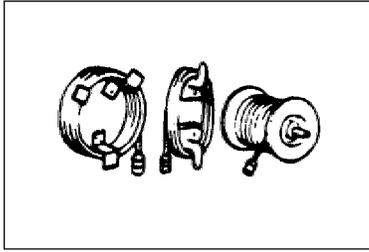
-
- a. Fit snug without deforming or crimping the line or cable.
 - b. Be spaced no more than 24 inches apart.
 - c. Be put at both ends of bends where the bending radius is 3 inches or less.
 - d. Be lined with heat resistant material if the line is likely to become extremely hot.
 - e. Be non-conductive or properly insulated if they are securing a conductor.
 - f. Require only one-handed operation with common hand tools.
 - g. Be of a quick release, hinged, or spring type if the line or cable must be frequently removed. Hinged clamps are preferred; they support the weight of the line during maintenance, freeing the technician's hands for other tasks (See also Figure 2.6.3, Quick release, hinged and spring type clamps).
 - h. For overhead mounting, be of a spring clamp type with a hinged locking latch over the open side of the clamp to prevent accidents.

Figure 2.6.3. Quick release, hinged and spring type clamps.

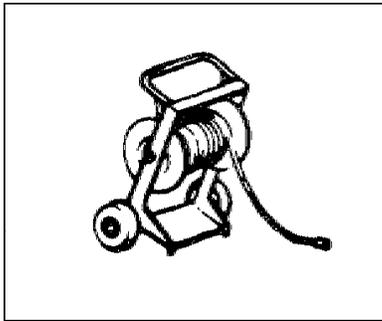


2.6.6 Storage and handling provisions. Adequate storage and handling provisions should be made for extension-type lines and cables such as:

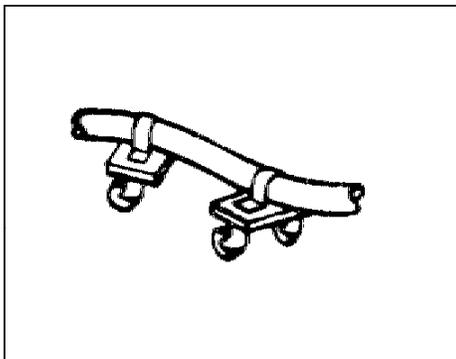
- a. Covered storage space in ground support equipment for storing lines and cables.
- b. Suitable racks, hooks, or cable winders within the storage place to hold lines and cables conveniently (See also Figure 2.6.4, Lane and cable rack, winder, and hook).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.6.4. Line and cable rack, winder, and hook.**

- c. Reels or reel carts for handling large, heavy, or long lines or cables. Automatic rewind should be available, where possible, to minimize damage and kinking (See also Figure 2.6.5, Line and cable reel cart).

Figure 2.6.5. Line and cable reel cart.

- d. Wheels or other mobile supports for especially large lines or cables that must be frequently moved (See also Figure 2.6.6, Line and cable mobile support).

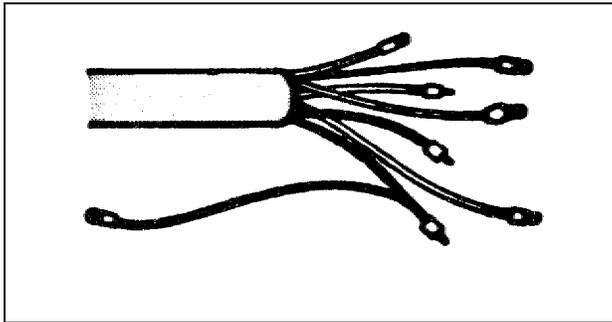
Figure 2.6.6. Line and cable mobile support**2.6.7 Electrical wire and cable design**

In addition to the general principles outlined above electrical wire and cable design should adhere to the guidelines listed below.

2.6.7.1. Simple layout and routing. The layout and routing of wires and cables should be predetermined and made as simple and functionally logical as possible by:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

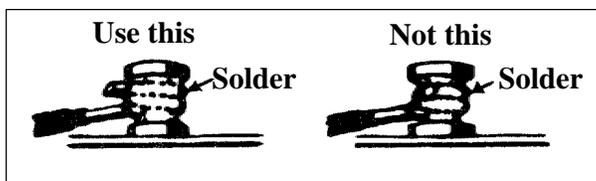
- a. Combining conductors into cable wherever practical.
- b. Combining conductors into harnesses wherever cables are not used.
- c. Segregating conductors into and within cables or harness according to their functions and relationships to replaceable equipment.
- d. Using preformed cables wherever possible to minimize wiring errors and to allow more flexible and efficient assembly methods. Provide spare leads in cables to allow for growth and to speed wiring time (See also Figure 2.6.7, Preformed cables).

Figure 2.6.7. Preformed cables.

- e. Where possible, use physical measures, such as cable length, to prevent interchanging units or components with the same or similar form, that are not, in fact, functionally interchangeable.

2.6.7.2 Wire connections. Wire connections should conform to the following recommendations:

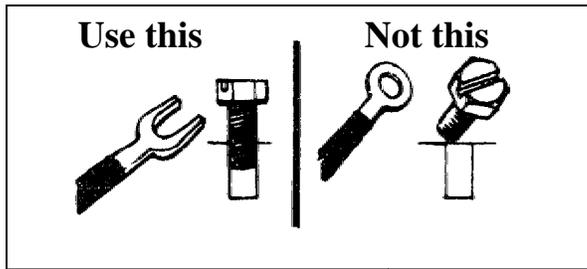
- a. For easy maintenance, plug-in contacts are better than screw terminals and screw terminals are better than solder connections.
- b. The end of a wire soldered to a terminal should be left out of the solder so that the wire will be easy to remove (See also Figure 2.6.8, Proper soldering of electrical wire).

Figure 2.6.8. Proper soldering of electrical wire.

- c. U-Lugs should be used rather than O-lugs whenever practicable (See also Figure 2.6.9, U-type lugs).

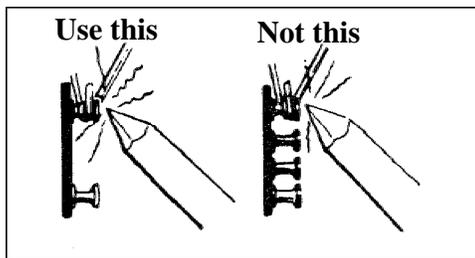
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.6.9. U-type lugs.



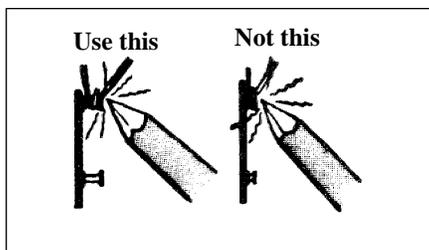
- d. Separate terminals to which wires are to be soldered should be separated far enough apart so that work on one terminal does not damage neighboring ones (See also Figure 2.6.10, Proper spacing of wire loads).

Figure 2.6.10. Proper spacing of wire loads.



- e. Terminals or other connections to which wires are soldered should be made long enough so that insulation and other materials are not burned by the hot soldering iron (See also Figure 2.6.11, Proper length of terminals and connections).

Figure 2.6.11. Proper length of terminals and connections.



2.6.7.3 Harnesses.

Harnesses should:

- Be designed, fabricated, and installed as units.
- Be held securely with lacing twine or other means acceptable to the user.
- Keep the individual conductors essentially parallel, so they do not intertwine, though twisted pairs may be used when required.

2.6.7.4 Lead lengths. Lead lengths should be as short as is consistent with the task to be performed, but long enough to allow:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- a. Easy connection and disconnection, with enough slack to back the wire away from the point of attachment to facilitate removal of the unit.
- b. Sufficient slack for at least two (preferably six) replacements of terminal fittings, electrical considerations permitting.
- c. Movements of moving parts to which they may be attached (doors, covers, etc.) without undue stress or bending.
- d. Connection, disconnection, or movement without requiring a bending radius of less than six times the diameter of the lead.
- e. Movement of the units which are difficult to handle in their mounted position to a more convenient position for connection or disconnection.
- f. Required checking of any functioning item in a convenient place; extension cables should be provided where this is not feasible.

2.6.7.5 Extension cables. Extension cables should be planned, designed, and provided to:

- a. Increase the efficiency and ease of maintenance.
- b. Avoid removal of assemblies or components for testing.
- c. Allow each functioning unit to be checked in a convenient place.
- d. Allow support equipment to be parked or set in convenient place.
- e. Serve as many related functions as possible, yet avoid the possibility of misuse or misconnection.

2.6.7.6 Mounting of wires and cables. Mounting of wires and cables, in addition to satisfying the General Principles previously listed, should:

- a. Ensure that lightly insulated wires clear parts normally at ground potential by at least 19 mm (0.75 in.) under operating conditions.
- b. Employ raceways, stuffing tubes, conduit, junction boxes, and insulation as necessary to obtain the required degree of protection, security, mounting, and ease of maintenance.
- c. Ensure that adequate accessibility is provided to raceways, stuffing tubes, etc.
- d. Allow checking of the signal flow through each conductor by arrangement, location, and mounting of leads; provide test points where leads are unavailable for testing; and provide test points in connectors.

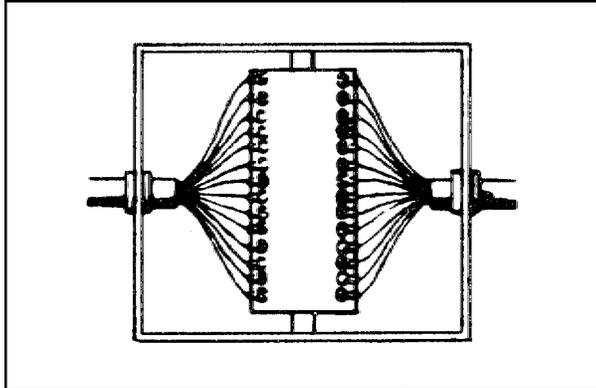
2.6.7.7 Leads. Leads should be mounted so they:

- a. Do not bear the weight of the cable, harness, or other components.
- b. Are provided with support at splices and points of connection.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Are "fanned out" to provide adequate clearance for the technician's hand and/or any tool required for checking or connection (See also Figure 2.6.12, Cable "fanning" for ease of maintenance).

Figure 2.6.12. Cable "fanning" for ease of maintenance.



- d. Are oriented, where possible, in such a manner as to prevent erroneous connection or "crossing."
- e. Do not allow flexing at weak areas, e.g., at splices, solder points, or where the conductor is bare or crimped, or strands are tinned together.

2.6.7.8 Leads or cables to moving parts. Leads or cables to moving parts, doors, drawers, racks, covers, etc. should have adequate slack and protection so they:

- Allow movement of the part (door, drawer, rack, etc.) without their disconnection.
- Fold out of the way automatically when the part is moved.
- Do not chafe or break under the repeated flexing required.
- Are not pinched or otherwise damaged by movement of the part.

2.6.7.9 Materials used for wire and cable applications. When determining materials to be used for wire and cable applications, the following should be considered:

- Clear plastic insulation allows rapid detection of internal breaks.
- When polyvinyl wire is used, care should be taken so there will be no cold flow of insulation due to tightness of lacing or mounting.
- Neoprene-covered rather than aluminum-sheathed cable should be used in areas where intense vibration or corrosive substances may cause failures.
- High-temperature wire should be used when wires are routed near ducts carrying pressures over 50 psi and/or temperatures above 2000° C (3920° F).
- Metallic shielding unprotected by outer insulation should be secured to prevent the shielding from contacting exposed terminals or conductors.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.6.7.10 Wire and cable insulation. Wire and cable insulation should be protected from termite destruction by coating them with compounds of creosote, antimony, or other mixtures acceptable to the user.

2.6.7.11 Coding insulated wire or cable. When cables contain individually insulated conductors with a common sheath, these cables should be coded. The coding should be repeated every 305 mm (12 in.).

2.6.7.11.1 Type of coding. Where coding is used, insulated wire or cable should be color- or number-coded in accordance with standards acceptable to the user (e.g., MILSTD-195; MILSTD-681).

2.6.7.12 Coding for equipment and connectors. Where applicable, cables should be labeled to indicate the equipment to which they belong and the connectors with which they mate.

2.6.8 Fluid and gas line design

2.6.8.1 Misconnection. Misconnection during servicing or maintenance operations should be prevented by:

- a. Standardizing fittings so it is impossible to interchange lines that differ in content.
- b. Using arrangement, size, shape, and color coding as necessary to prevent interchange of adjacent lines.
- c. Identifying all fluid carrying lines by color bands.

2.6.8.2 Protecting personnel and equipment during disconnection. Spraying or draining on personnel or equipment during disconnection should be avoided by:

- a. Locating connections away from work areas and sensitive components.
- b. Providing shielding for sensitive components where required.
- c. Providing drains and bleed fittings to allow draining or reduction of pressure prior to disconnection.
- d. Providing high visibility warning signs at disconnect areas and other locations where the pressure or content of lines could injure personnel.
- e. Providing a positive indication of gas or fluid pressure or flow to verify that the line is passive before disconnection; lines with quick disconnect couplings that are designed to be operated under pressure do not require such indicators.
- f. Designing lines to minimize escape or loss of fluids, particularly toxic materials, during connect or disconnect operations.

2.6.8.3 Drainage problems. Drainage problems should be prevented by:

- a. Designing lines to completely empty where required.
- b. Avoiding low points or dips in lines that are difficult to drain.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Making bends, where possible, in the horizontal rather than the vertical plane, to avoid fluid traps.
- d. Providing drains for low points where required to drain such traps.

2.6.8.4 Use of Flexible tubing. Flexible tubing should be used instead of rigid lines because it allows more flexibility in handling, can be backed-off easily, and is easier to thread through equipment when replacement is required.

2.6.8.4.1 Installation of rigid lines. Where rigid lines are used, they should be installed with fittings that do not require the line to be backed-off for disconnection.

2.6.8.5 Use of flexible hose. Flexible hose should be used rather than pipes or tubing where minimum space is available for removing, handling, or replacing lines.

2.6.8.6 Supports. Adequate supports should be provided for lines which run from external service or test equipment, or where extensions will be attached for other purposes. These supports must withstand:

- a. The initial surges of pressure through the line.
- b. The weight of the external extensions.
- c. The rigor of handling and repeated connection and disconnection.

2.6.8.7 Mounting and installation of lines. Lines should be mounted and installed in such a way as to preclude kinking by:

- a. Employing sufficient mounts and supports to prevent kinking.
- b. Employing quick-disconnect fittings to reduce manhandling of lines during connection or disconnection.
- c. Eliminating workspace restrictions around mounts and connections that may cause the technician to bend the line in installation, disconnection, or removal.

2.6.8.8 Clearance space for system components and piping. A nominal 0.91 m (3 ft) maintenance clearance space should be provided around all major system components and piping 609 mm (24 in) in diameter and larger. Overhead clearance should be a minimum of 2.13 m (7 ft.) above the floor for passage of personnel and removal of equipment.

2.6.8.8.1 Accessibility of valves and instruments on piping runs. Components such as valves, thermowells, flow meters, and other instrumentation on piping runs should be accessible to maintenance personnel.

2.6.8.8.2 Piping systems in radioactive areas. Piping systems in radioactive areas should be routed to accommodate men physically encumbered by protective garments, air bottles, and face masks or plastic hoods. Reach rods should only be used where direct access to the valves will result in a radiation exposure or other adverse environmental condition significantly exceeding that obtained by manual operation.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.7 Connector design

A connector is any fixture designed and intended to join or connect lines (such as a single length of pipe, hose, wire, or tubing) or cable (e.g., a number of lines, bound together within a single, permanent sheath).

2.7.1 Selection, design, and use of connectors. Decisions affecting the selection, design, and use of connectors should be compatible and coordinated with:

- a. Line and cable principles (See section, 2.6).
- b. Fastener principles (See section, 2.11).
- c. Mounting and configuration principles (See section, 2.2).
- d. Environmental factors to be endured.
- e. Maintenance routines in which connectors will be involved.
- f. Reliability of the system in which connectors will be used. Connectors are causes of lowered reliability and should be considered as such in system design.
- g. Reliability of components whose connection they affect. Components of low reliability should be easiest and fastest to disconnect.

2.7.2 Objective for use of connector. Connectors should be selected, designed, and mounted to:

- a. Maximize the rapidity and ease of maintenance operations.
- b. Facilitate the removal and replacement of components and units.
- c. Minimize set-up time of test and service equipment.
- d. Ensure compatibility between prime and ground support or auxiliary systems.
- e. Minimize dangers to personnel and equipment from pressures, contents, or voltages of lines during the release of connectors.
- f. Be operated by hand where possible, or with common hand tools. Requirements for special tools to effect connection, disconnection, or removal of connectors should be avoided.

2.7.3 Use of different types of connectors

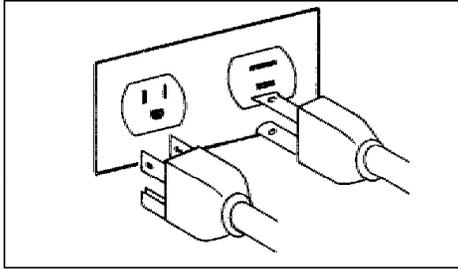
2.7.3.1 Plug-in connectors. Plug in connectors are the fastest and easiest to use, e.g., simply push in or pull out, but they also are the easiest to disconnect accidentally (e.g. have low holding power). Plug-in connectors should:

- a. Be used where possible for all connections that will not be seriously stressed and particularly for those that must be frequently disconnected (See also Figure 2.7.1, Example of plug-in connector).
- b. Not be used where stresses or pressures will overcome holding power.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Not be used where holding power is such that lines are likely to be damaged or connectors loosened by the pulling required to disconnect.

Figure 2.7.1. Example of plug-in connector.



2.7.3.2 Quick-disconnect devices. Quick-disconnect devices are very fast and easy to use. They exist in a variety of forms and include any type of connector that can be released by snap action, twisting up to a full turn, triggering a latch or spring device, or removing an external pin. Quick-disconnect devices should be:

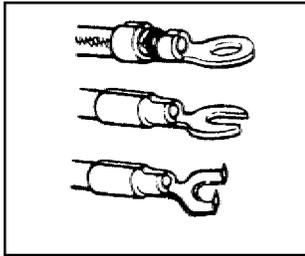
- a. Designed for hand operation including operation with gloved hands.
- b. Designed to prevent loosening which allows leakage or overheating from pressures or voltages involved.
- c. Provided with self-locking catches, as necessary, to prevent loosening, resist stress, and ensure secure connection.
- d. Used for all connections of:
 - Auxiliary, test, or support equipment to other major units.
 - Units which require frequent disconnection or replacement.
 - Units which require replacement within critical readiness times.

2.7.3.3 Lugs and crimp-on devices. These are most useful to connect or splice single wires. Both can be used, and are preferable to soldering, at elevated temperatures. They should have the following characteristics:

- a. Lugs must be compatible with the terminal post requirements.
- b. Where lugs and crimp-on devices are used, slack should be provided for at least six replacements of those devices which must be cut off.
- c. Lugs and crimp-on devices should clamp the insulation as well as the conductor, to provide support for the line and preclude flexing of the conductor against the end of the connector (See also Figure 2.7.2, Example of proper attachment of crimp-on devices).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.7.2. Example of proper attachment of crimp-on devices.



- d. "U-Lugs" should be used rather than "eye-lugs."
- Are easier and faster to connect and disconnect.
 - Do not require complete removal of the connecting fastener.
 - Are more likely to disconnect rather than allow the line to break under extreme stress.

Figure 2.7.3. Example of quick-disconnect connector.

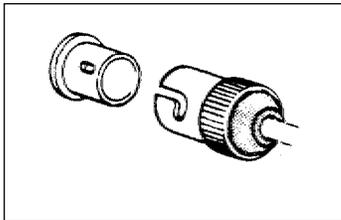
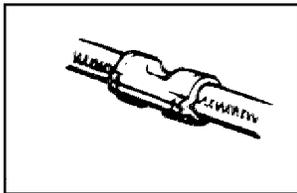
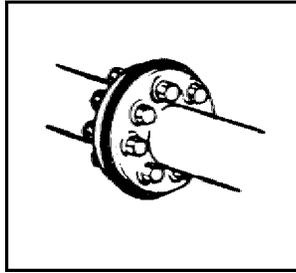


Figure 2.7.4 Example of crimp-on lug.



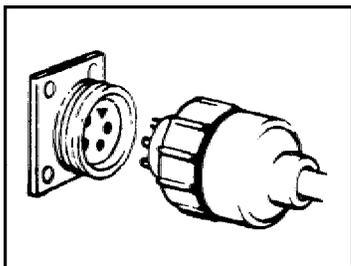
2.7.3.4 Bolt or screw assemblies. These provide a very secure connection, but also require time-consuming handling and operation of bolts or screws. They are particularly useful for connecting large or high-pressure lines. Bolt or screw connector assemblies must (See also Figure 2.7.5, Example of bolt assembly):

- a. Satisfy fastener preferences and requirements (See section 2.11, Fastener design and application).
- b. Ensure adequate work and tool clearances about these fasteners.
- c. Use the minimum possible number of separate parts.
- d. Satisfy gasket and seal requirements.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.7.5. Example of bolt assembly.**

2.7.3.5 Threaded connectors. Threaded connectors provide very secure connections, particularly when locked into place by set screws, retainers, or safety wires. They require more time to operate, depending upon the ease of use, number of turns required, and types of tools required. Threaded connectors should be right-hand threaded. They should also:

- a. Require as few turns as are consistent with holding requirements.
- b. Be operable by hand when used for electrical connection.
- c. Require only common hand tools or special tools which are immediately accessible.
- d. Be so designed that the line need not be backed-off to effect connection or disconnection, especially in the case of rigid lines.
- e. Be designed and arranged to reduce the danger of loosening other connectors while working on one. This is a major problem with threaded fasteners on continuous pipe or tube systems.
- f. Be designed so that aligning guides and connector pins are easy to engage and start to ensure accurate alignment before the threaded section makes contact (See also Figure 2.7.6, Example of threaded connector).

Figure 2.7.6. Example of threaded connector.

2.7.3.6 Soldering, brazing, or welding. Such methods provide the securest connection and are often the most efficient way of securing small connection points or maintaining hermetic seals, but such connections require considerable maintenance time for connection or disconnection. These connections should meet the following criteria:

- a. Soldering should satisfy terminal post requirements.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- b. Welding and brazing should be used only for connections that are very unlikely to require disconnection.
- c. These methods should never be used to effect connection of lines or assemblies that may require disconnection by line maintenance personnel.

2.7.4 Electrical connections**2.7.4.1 Electrical contacts**

2.7.4.1.1 Protecting against moisture. Whenever possible, superior insulating materials, corrosion-proof platings, and moisture-proof connectors should be used. If moisture-proof connectors cannot be used, the connector case should contain a drain hole. Vertical mounting of connectors should be avoided.

2.7.4.1.2 Protecting against corrosion. To protect against corrosion, all parts and mating surfaces of connectors should be coated with an electrical lubricating compound. Metal parts of all medium, very high, and ultra-high frequency (MF, VHF, and UHF) connectors should be silver plated inside and out.

2.7.4.1.3 Insertion forces. Insertion forces should be kept low to minimize the possibility of damaging contact surfaces on connector parts.

2.7.4.1.4 Clamps between metal and insulation. Contacts should be avoided which depend on wires, lugs, terminals, etc. clamped between metal and insulation. These contacts should be clamped between metal members.

2.7.4.1.5 Alligator clips. Both ends of static discharge lines and grouped wires should be securely fastened. Alligator clips may be used for **temporary** grounding or testing because they are fast and easy to use; they should not be used for permanent grounding because they may become inadvertently detached.

2.7.4.1.6 Spring contacts. Spring contacts should be used which are:

- a. Relatively long to avoid concentrating stress and permit contact surfaces to wipe each other clean as contact is made.
- b. Made of beryllium copper where contact is to be frequently stressed-copper is adequate for most other purposes.
- c. Not stamped from flat metal-these tend to resume flat shape after a number of flexings.

2.7.4.1.7 Contact surfaces. Contact surfaces should be plated with non-tarnishing materials such as:

- a. Gold-a perfect plating material but very costly.
- b. Cadmium-satisfactory for most purposes.
- c. Silver-may be used wherever its tendency to migrate in humid environments does not interfere with circuit operation.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.7.4.2 Terminal posts

2.7.4.2.1 Terminal post location and construction. Loose or poorly arranged terminal posts require about three times as long to solder or connect than adequately secured ones. Therefore, posts should be located, constructed, and arranged so that:

- a. They are accessible.
- b. A maximum of three wires will be attached to a single post.
- c. Good electrical contact is assured.
- d. Posts will not loosen, rotate, or break with repeated usage.
- e. Wires can be repeatedly removed and replaced, disconnected, and/or soldered without damaging or loosening the posts.
- f. Adequate hand and tool clearances are provided for connection and disconnection.
- g. Posts are far enough apart so work (particularly soldering) on one terminal does not damage neighboring connections, insulation, or other parts.

2.7.4.2.2 Solder type posts. Solder type posts should, in addition, be designed and mounted so that:

- a. They are completely plated with tin or silver.
- b. They are notched or provided with other means for mechanically securing the wire prior to soldering.
- c. The free end of the wire sticks out of the solder and thus can be easily grasped with pliers to facilitate disconnection.
- d. Supports are provided, where stranded copper wire is to be soldered, to prevent flexing where the strands are tinned together.

2.7.4.3 Electrical plugs

2.7.4.3.1 Design to preclude misconnection. Plugs should be designed so that it is physically impossible to insert the wrong plug into a receptacle or insert a plug the wrong way into a receptacle. This may be accomplished by use of plugs of different sizes; different keys or alignment pins, different pin configurations, etc. for nearby connections. (See also example C and E from Figure 2.7.8, Plug and receptacle design and identification methods).

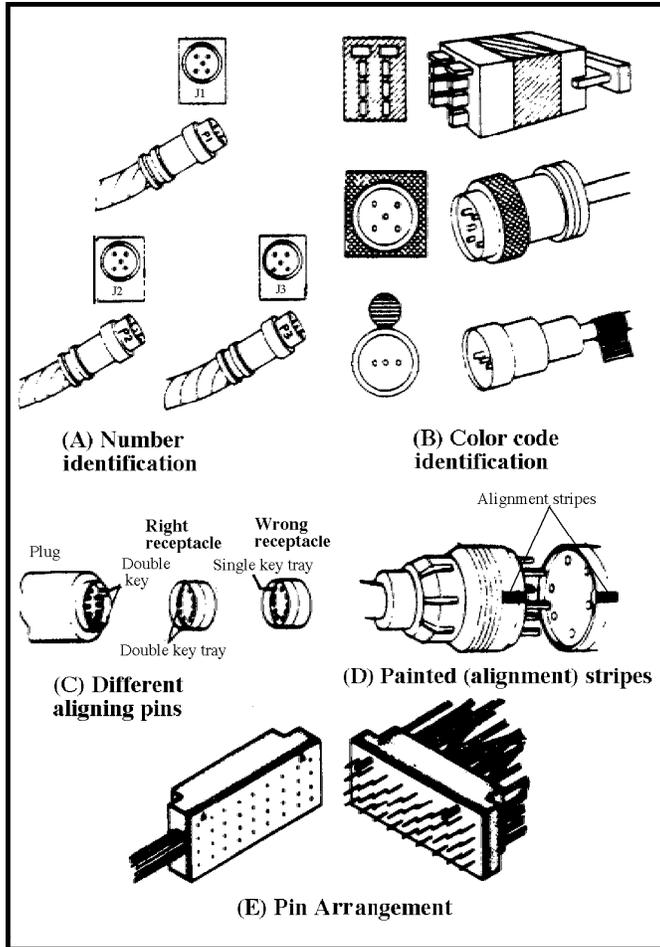
2.7.4.3.2 Coding techniques for pin-connector mating and alignment. Use of coding techniques for pin-connector mating and alignment. Coding techniques such as alphanumeric coding, color coding, painted (alignment) stripes, etc. should be used to increase ease of correctly mating the plug and its corresponding connector where proper orientation is not obvious (See examples A, B, and D from Figure 2.7.7, Plug and receptacle design and identification methods).

2.7.4.3.3 Pin identification. Each pin on each plug should be clearly identified, e.g., number and/or letter identification.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

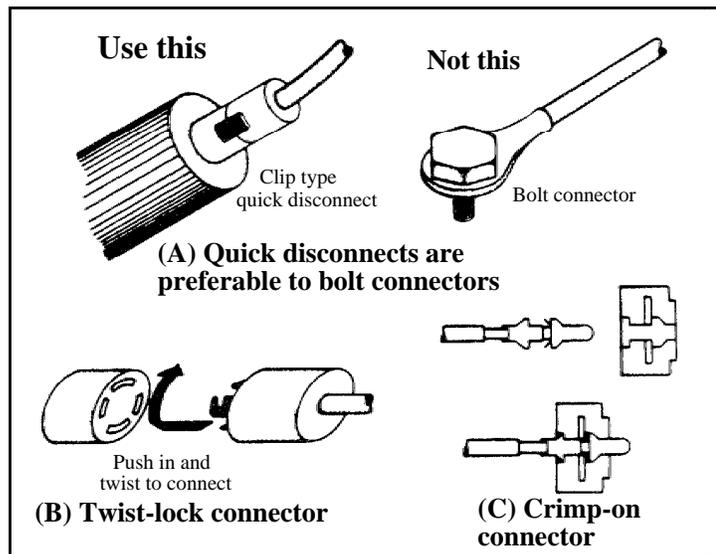
2.7.4.3.4 Quick-disconnect plugs. Quick-disconnect plugs or plugs that can be disconnected with no more than one turn should be used rather than plugs with fine threads that require numerous turns.

Figure 2.7.7. Plug and receptacle design and identification methods.



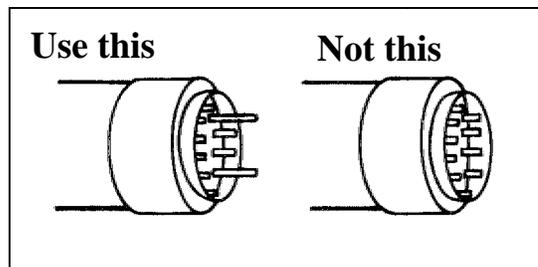
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.7.8. Examples of quick-disconnect plugs.



2.7.4.3.5 Aligning pins. Plugs should be used in which the aligning pins or keys extend beyond the electrical pins. This arrangement protects the electrical pins from damage through poor alignment or twisting of the plug when it is partially inserted (Figure 2.7.9, Example of extended alignment guides).

Figure 2.7.9. Example of extended alignment guides.

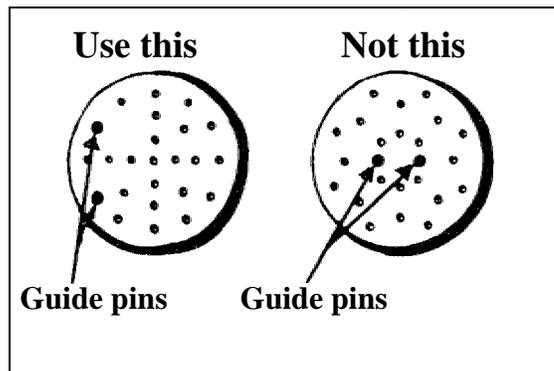


2.7.4.3.6 Assuring alignment before electrical contact. The configuration of aligning pins, keyways and other equivalent devices should insure that alignment is obtained before the electrical pins engage and contact is made.

2.7.4.3.7 Arrangement of aligning pins. Symmetrical arrangements of aligning pins or keys should be avoided so that plugs cannot be inserted 180° from the correct position (See also Figure 2.7.10, Example of asymmetrical aligning pin arrangement).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.7.10. Example of asymmetrical aligning pin arrangement.

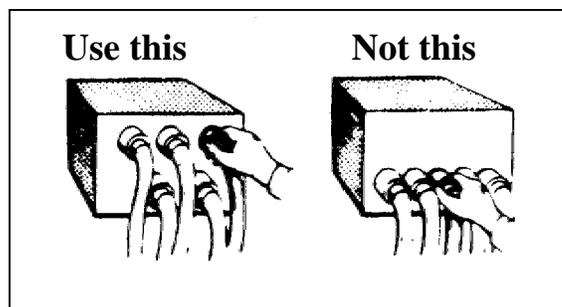


2.7.4.3.8 Space between connectors. Connectors should be located far enough apart so they can be gripped firmly for connecting and disconnecting. The actual space required will vary with the size of the plug and the type of clothing worn by the maintainer (for example, normal vs. protective clothing). Space between connectors should not be less than 25 mm (1 in.) except where connectors are to be sequentially removed and replaced and 25 mm (1 in.) clearance is provided in a swept area of at least 270° around each connector at the start of its removal/replacement sequence. Spacing should be measured from the outermost portion of the connector (i.e. from the backshell, strain relief clamp, dust cover, etc.). Where high torque is required to tighten or loosen the connector, space should be provided for use of a connector wrench (See also Figure 2.7.11, Proper arrangement of electrical connectors).

2.7.4.3.9 Jerk-open plugs. When a part can be removed for maintenance, cables connecting the removable part with the rest of the machine or system should have plugs and receptacles that will disconnect before the cables will break, particularly if non-electronics personnel do the removing. A jerk-open plug will separate before any damage is done; a screw plug will not.

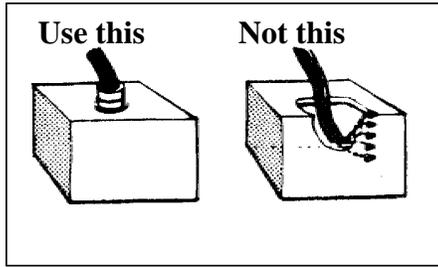
2.7.4.3.10 Plugs and receptacles for connecting cables. Plugs and receptacles should be used for connecting cables to equipment instead of pig-tailing them. Pigtailed connections are more difficult to replace (See also Figure 2.7.12, Plug vs. pig-tailing connections).

Figure 2.7.11. Proper arrangement of electrical connectors.



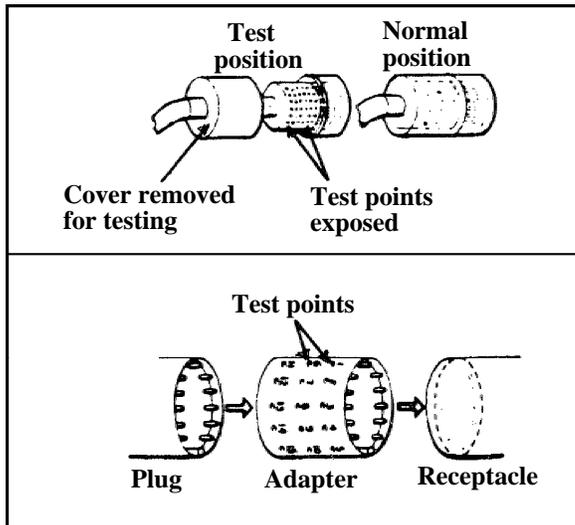
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.7.12. Plug vs. pig-tailing connections.



2.7.4.3.11 Integral test points. Plugs should be used with integral test points for each input and output that cannot be easily checked. Otherwise, an integral sliding cover for the test points in the plug should be provided if dust and moisture is a problem. As an alternative, a test point adapter may be provided for insertion between plugs and receptacles (See also Figure 2.7.13, Examples of plugs with integral test point or test point adapter).

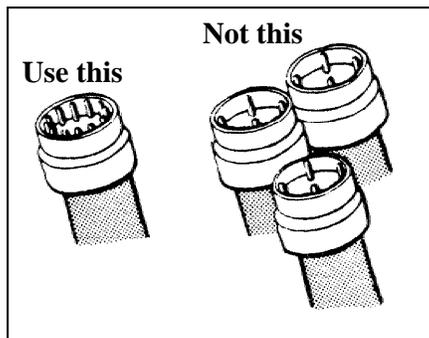
Figure 2.7.13. Examples of plugs with integral test point or test point adapter.



2.7.4.3.12 Number of pins. Fewer plugs with many pins should be used rather than many plugs with few pins. It takes about the same amount of time to connect a plug with many pins as it does one with few pins (See also Figure 2.7.14, Example of proper use of plugs with many pins).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.7.14. Example of proper use of plugs with many pins.



2.7.4.3.13 Shorting. Connectors should be used in which electrical contacts cannot be shorted by external objects.

2.7.4.3.14 Plugs “cold”. Receptacles should be "hot" and plugs "cold."

2.7.4.3.15 Self-locking safety catch. Plugs should have a self-locking safety catch rather than require safety wiring. If safety wiring is required, holes and slots should be designed for most efficient and rapid attachment of safety wire.

2.7.4.3.16 Transmitting stored charges. Plugs and leads should be designed not to transmit stored charges when being disconnected.

2.7.4.3.17 Design to withstand rough use. Lead pins and plugs should be designed strong enough to withstand rough use.

2.7.4.3.18 Power disconnects. Individual power disconnects should be used to permit power to be turned off in one part of the system without disconnecting the entire system.

2.7.4.3.19 Labeling power receptacles. Power receptacles should be clearly labeled for primary, secondary, or utility systems to prevent injury to personnel or damage to equipment.

2.7.4.3.20 Disassembly and adapters. Disassembly of connectors to change pin connections should be performed without special tools. When adapters are required, they should be capable of being hand-tightened.

2.7.4.3.21 Drawer modules. Drawer modules for “remove and replace” maintenance should be provided with connectors mounted on the back of the drawer and mated with connectors in the cabinet to accomplish electrical interconnection between the drawer, other equipment in the rack and external connectors, where feasible. Guide pins or equivalent devices should be provided to aid in alignment.

2.7.4.3.22 Electronic modules. Replacement electronic items (e.g., modules and high-failure-rate components) should be provided with simple plug-in, rack-and-panel type connectors.

2.7.5 Fluid and gas connectors.

2.7.5.1 Location and installation of fluid and gas connectors. Fluid and gas connectors should be located and installed so that:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

-
- a. Backing-off of the line or removal of other components is not required to effect disconnection or removal of related items.
 - b. Draining, filling, or other maintenance involving the connectors can be accomplished without jacking up the equipment.
 - c. Leakage tests can be performed easily and without endangering the technician. Tests should be planned so the technician does not have to insert his head into areas of extreme noise, vibration, or other danger while equipment is running.

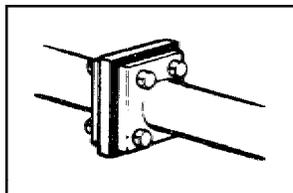
2.7.5.2 Gaskets and seals. Gaskets and seals used in connections of fluid and gas lines should be selected and installed to

- a. Be replaceable or have renewable wearing surfaces, rather than require throw-away of the connector when the seal is damaged or worn.
- b. Be easily replaceable without removal of other connector parts or disassembly of other equipment.
- c. Be identifiable with part numbers so they can be easily ordered and handled logistically; the job instructions should specify the life of seals and gaskets and recommend when they should be changed.
- d. Contain or provide features, where required, which:
 - Permit lubricant escape under conditions of high pressures.
 - Prevent leakage of fluid when disconnect is made.
 - Prevent air from entering disconnected lines where such air would create maintenance problems, as in hydraulic lines.
 - Allow tightening to offset shrinkage, particularly of rubber seals and gaskets.

2.7.5.3 Gaskets and seals. Gaskets and seals should be used which:

- a. Are visible externally after they are installed, to reduce the common failure to replace seals during assembly or repair (See also Figure 2.7.15, Example of externally visible gasket).

Figure 2.7.15. Example of externally visible gasket.



- b. Do not protrude or extrude beyond the coupling. Tapered nylon or Teflon washers of appropriate size can be employed to prevent extrusion. (Protruding seals are chipped and shredded by vibration or contact which may in turn spread to cause internal damage).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.8 Test and service point design

Test points provide a means for conveniently and safely determining the operational status of equipment and isolating malfunctions. Test points, strategically placed, make signals available to the technician for checking, adjusting, or troubleshooting.

Service points provide a means for lubricating, filling, draining, charging, and similar service function. Service points allow adequate adjustment, lubrication, filling, changing, charging, and other services to be provided on all equipment and components requiring such service between overhauls.

2.8.1 General principles for test and service point design

2.8.1.1 Avoiding need for frequent testing and servicing. Requirements for periodic or repetitive testing and servicing of components should be avoided when possible by using sealed bearings, oil impregnated bushings, highly reliable components, inexpensive components that may be discarded upon failure or replace at predetermined intervals to make failure unlikely, etc.

2.8.1.2 Standardization. To the degree feasible, service and adjustment points should be standardized to reduce the diversity of supporting materials and the likelihood that the wrong material or device might be used inadvertently. Servicing points should be designed to minimize the number and diversity of portable supporting adapters and connectors; where required, they should be built into the equipment as much as feasible. Where standardization is not feasible, the connectors or fittings should be distinctively identified so that the wrong material or device is not likely to be used inadvertently.

2.8.1.3 Test and service point compatibility. Test and service points should be designed for compatibility with checking, troubleshooting, and servicing procedures and test/service equipment. The need for cumbersome test equipment, accessory equipment, fittings, connectors, etc. should be minimized.

2.8.1.4 Labeling dangerous test and service points. Dangerous test and service points should be labeled as such. The labeling should clearly identify the hazards and be readily visible, using capital letters.

2.8.1.5 Distinctively different connectors or fittings. Distinctively different connectors or fittings should be provided for each type of test or service equipment, probe, grease, oil, etc. to minimize the likelihood of error or misuse.

2.8.1.6 Location of test and service and adjustment points. Test and service points should be located so they are:

- a. Recessed, guarded, or otherwise protected from damage by personnel, moving cargo or equipment, dust, moisture, etc.
- b. Within reach and/or readily observable as needed when the maintenance person is using related or corresponding controls, displays, fittings, switches, so that maintainer place-to-place movement is not required during the adjustment process.
- c. Convenient for use with related maintenance support equipment and compatible, in terms of work space and clearance, with the use of such equipment.
- d. Located to avoid safety hazards to personnel and equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- Service points should be located away from electrical, mechanical, and other hazards to personnel, and guards and shields should be used as needed.
 - Safety valves should be located so that they can be readily adjusted, but where the exhaust from their lifting will not endanger people or equipment.
 - Fluid fill points should be located so as to avoid combustion (e.g., away from sources of heat, sparking, or potential voltage shorts) and spill hazards to personnel and easily damaged equipment.
- e. Not hidden or obstructed by bulkheads, brackets, other units, etc., and so disassembly, removal, or support of other units, wires, etc. when testing, servicing, or troubleshooting is not required.

2.8.1.7 Indicating location of internally located points. Locations of internally located testing or servicing points should be indicated on the access plate or adjacent surface of the equipment.

2.8.1.8 Connectors or fasteners. Connectors or fasteners for test and service points should:

- a. Use direct insertion or quick disconnects except on pressurized systems.
- b. Be aligned or keyed on pressurized systems so that they are properly seated before an opening occurs, to prevent loss of gases or fluids and reduce the hazards involved.
- c. Require only hand operation by common hand tools; special tools should not be required for the connection of test and service equipment.
- d. Incorporate holding devices, clamps, and auxiliary shelves to support test probes, test sets, etc., and free the technician's hands for other tasks, such as making adjustments.
- e. Incorporate guards and shields to protect personnel and test or service equipment, particularly if the equipment must be serviced while running.
- f. Employ self-sealing elastomers or similar devices to allow probing into hermetically sealed units. Such devices should be provided with tool guides to ensure that proper contact is made.

2.8.1.9 Extended fittings and guides. Extended fittings should be provided for hard-to-reach points and guides should be provided for calibration tools that require blind operation.

2.8.1.10 Windows. Windows should be provided for visual inspections.

2.8.1.11 Coding for test and service points. Test and service points should be designed so they are easily distinguishable from each other and the equipment on which they are located. Color coding with a distinctive color may be used to meet this objective. Where used, the color(s) chosen for test points should be clearly different from the color(s) used for service points.

2.8.1.12 Use of luminescent markings. In low illumination luminescent markings for test and service points should be used if they must be used

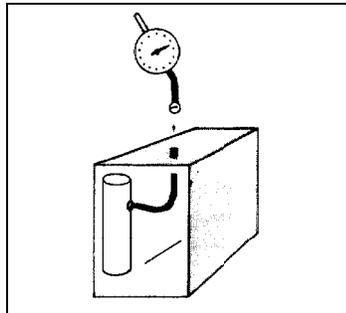
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.8.2 Test points

2.8.2.1 Number of test points. Sufficient test points should be provided so that it is not necessary to remove sub-assemblies to accomplish troubleshooting/fault diagnoses.

2.8.2.2 Use of self-sealing elastomers. If internal probing of hermetically sealed units is required, accesses should be covered with self sealing elastomers, and needle probes should be used (See also Figure 2.8.1, Internal needle probe and self-sealing elastomer.)

Figure 2.8.1. Internal needle probe and self-sealing elastomer.

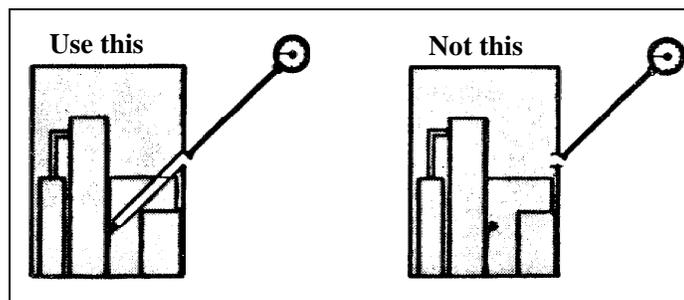


2.8.2.3 Use of guides. Suitable guides for test probes should be provided when test points are located internally or blind operation is required.

2.8.2.4 Use of high pressure test indicators. High pressure test indicators should be built wherever possible to avoid some of the dangers in temporary high pressure connections.

2.8.2.5 Use of a special ground point. A special "ground" point should be provided if a good grounding point is not available and connection to ground is required during tests of a given unit; technicians may have difficulty if only painted surfaces are available for ground connections (See also Figure 2.8.2, Test probe guides).

Figure 2.8.2. Test probe guides.



2.8.2.6 Test point for built-in and external test equipment.

2.8.2.6.1 Built-in test equipment. The location of test points depends on the testing method selected, primarily on whether built-in test equipment is used. With built in test equipment, especially automatic equipment, accessibility and convenience of test points are of relatively minor importance. A test capability built in as part of the equipment or installation is often most desirable for efficient maintenance

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

and troubleshooting. Because some test equipment is large, heavy, and expensive, it may not be practical to design a built-in test unit such as that recommended above for each major component of a system and consequently partially built-in test units may be used. (See also Table 2.9.1, Advantages and disadvantages of types of test equipment in Section 2.9, Test equipment design.)

2.8.2.6.2 External test equipment. When external test equipment is used, accessibility and convenience are major considerations. Depending on the equipment used, the arrangement of test points may also be a major consideration.

2.8.2.6.3 Integrated portable test units. If built-in-test equipment is not feasible or desirable an integrated portable test unit that essentially duplicates the functions of the built-in-test equipment should be used. Such a unit should be connected through a single, multi-prong contact on the end of a cable rather than being connected to a number of individual test points.

2.8.2.6.4 Built-in test panels for non-integrated portable units. If none of the alternatives described above is practical, a test panel should be provided on the equipment. With this arrangement, the outputs of each test point should be designed for checking by use of standard test equipment, and the points should be planned to provide a miniature block diagram of the system, with each block representing a line replaceable unit. Overlays for the test panel should direct the technician to test points he should check and indicate the order in which they should be checked. In-tolerance signals should be shown on the overlays, and test points should be coded on the panel with full instructions provided in the maintenance manual in the event the overlay is lost (See also Section 2.8.2.7.4, Location of test point on a central test panel).

2.8.2.6.5 Test points on replaceable units. Finally, if none of the above arrangements are practical, test points should be provided for the inputs and outputs on each replaceable unit. If possible, components should be mounted on one side of the board or chassis and wiring should be on the other side. Even if the wiring is mounted on the same side as the parts, test leads should be brought through to the back. An advantage in having test points on the back is that full identifying information for each test point can be marked on the back without being obscured by parts.

2.8.2.7 Location and grouping of test points

2.8.2.7.1 Determining location of test points. The location of test points should be fixed by determining from maintenance procedures the signals and controls that must be available to the technician and at what points they must be available. Test points should be located close to the controls and displays which are used in the checking operation. The technician should be able to activate the control and see the display at the same time.

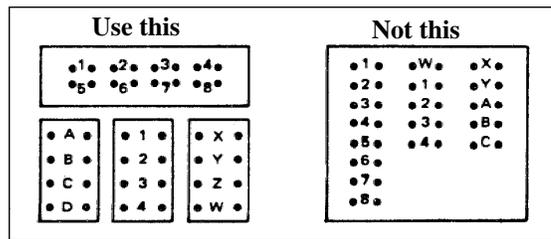
2.8.2.7.2 Grouping test points. Test points should be grouped on a central panel to facilitate checking and troubleshooting.

2.8.2.7.3 Location of test points. Test points should be located so they are in a convenient arrangement for sequential checking.

2.8.2.7.4 Location of test point on a central test panel. When test points are located on one central test panel, they should be grouped according to the units which are used for testing (See also Figure 2.8.3, Proper test point grouping.)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.8.3. Proper test point grouping.



2.8.2.7.5 High accessibility. Highly accessible test points should be provided for troubleshooting and checking.

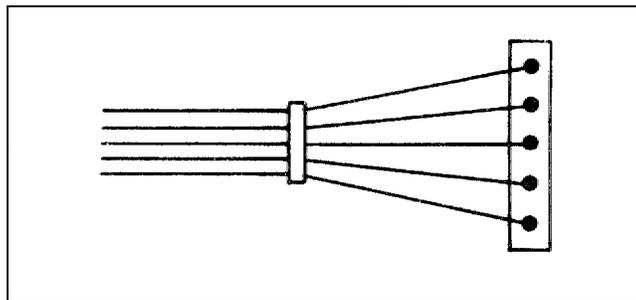
2.8.2.7.6 Test points for fuel hydraulic and pressure systems. Test points should be provided on fuel, hydraulic, and pressure systems to eliminate the need for:

- Removing fittings to attach test equipment.
- Removing components such as fuel pumps and actuators during troubleshooting.

2.8.2.7.7 Test access for mechanical components likely to wear. Test accesses should be provided for mechanical components likely to wear. For example, brake assemblies should be provided with an inspection opening or access to permit insertion of a gauge for determining the clearance between the brake lining and drum.

2.8.2.7.8 Fanning out of cables. On electrical equipment, cables should be fanned out on terminal strips if special test points are not provided (See also Figure 2.8.4, Fan out cables for test points).

Figure 2.8.4. Fan out cables for test points.



2.8.2.8 Labeling and coding test points

2.8.2.8.1 Label content. Test points should be labeled with the name of what is being tested. If it is not possible to include the name on the test point, it should be coded with a symbol. Each test point should be uniquely labeled and have a code number keyed to the maintenance manual. Explanations for symbols used should be in tables placed near the equipment or in job instructions. Test points should also be labeled with in-tolerance indications or tolerance limits of the signal being measured there.

2.8.2.8.2 Label location. Test point labels should be located consistently throughout the system and should be consistent with identifiers used in maintenance instructions.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.8.2.8.3 Color coding test points. Color coding of test points should be considered for easy location. (See also 1.8.1.11, Coding for service and test points).

2.8.2.8.4 Use of phosphorescent or chemoluminescent markings. Phosphorescent or chemoluminescent markings should be used on test points, selector switches, and meters that require reading in low light conditions.

2.8.2.9 Service points

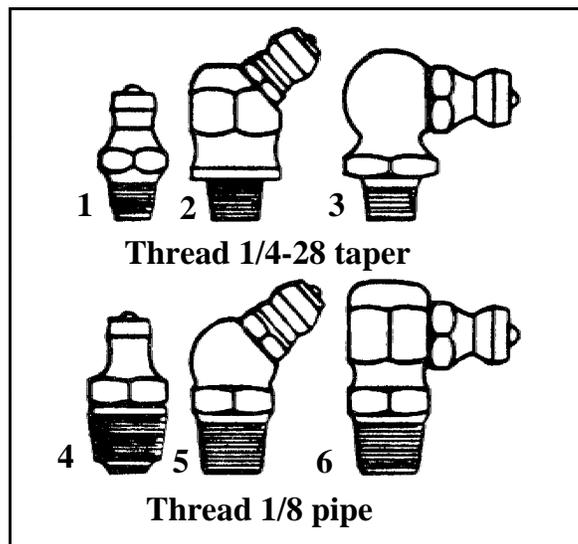
2.8.2.9.1 Lubrication points. Lubrication points should be designed with a reservoir to reduce the frequency of required lubrication.

2.8.2.9.2 Service fittings. Service fittings should be designed to be hand operable or to require only common hand tools. Petcocks and valves are preferred to drain plugs.

2.8.2.9.3 Guards. Guards should be provided around lubrication points which may be serviced while equipment is operating.

2.8.2.9.4 Standardized grease fittings. Grease fittings should be standardized for a given lubricant so that the number of different grease gun tips required is minimized. (See also Figure 2.8.5, Example of typical lubrication fittings.)

Figure 2.8.5. Example of typical lubrication fittings.



2.8.2.9.5 Oil filler caps. Oil filler caps should be designed so they (See also Figure 2.8.6, Example of well-designed oil filler cap):

- a. Snap and remain open and closed.
- b. Provide a large round opening for oil filling.
- c. Permit application of breather vents, dipsticks, and strainers.

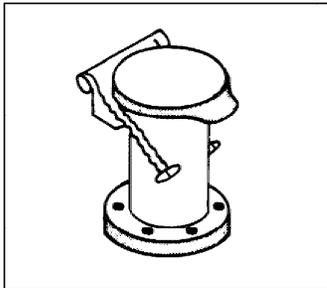
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- d. Use hinges rather than chains for attaching the lid.
- e. Look different when opened or closed.

2.8.2.9.6 Pressure fittings. Pressure fittings should be provided for applying grease to bearings which are shielded from oil.

2.8.2.9.7 Fuels and lubricants. The same fuels and lubricants should be used in auxiliary or mounted equipment, as in the prime unit.

Figure 2.8.6. Example of well-designed oil filler cap.



2.8.2.9.8 Lubrication requirements. Lubrication requirements should be reduced to two types, if possible; one for engine and another for gear lubrication.

2.8.2.9.9 Lubrication points or easy access. If lubrication is required, lubrication points rather than equipment disassembly should be provided. If lubrication points are not feasible, easy access to equipment should be provided.

2.8.2.10 Fluid level indicators

2.8.2.10.1 Use of built in indicators and gauges. To reduce the number of test and service points required, built-in indicators, pressure gauges, direct reading fluid level gauges, etc. should be used for quick checks without the need of auxiliary equipment.

2.8.2.10.2 Direct reading gauges. Direct reading gauges are preferable to dipsticks or other methods of indicating fluid levels, because they allow rapid, immediate, and continuous inspection, and thus remove requirements for inspection tables.

2.8.2.10.3 Calibration units. If used, gauges or dipsticks should be calibrated in terms of functional units (quarts, pounds, gallons, etc.), rather than in general terms such as dry, low, add, etc.

2.8.2.10.4 Accessibility. If used, gauges or dipsticks should be immediately accessible.

2.8.2.10.5 Readability. Gauges or dipsticks should be quickly and easily read, i.e., there should be good contrast between the finish of the gauge and the fluid.

2.8.2.10.6 Guidance on acceptable levels. Fluid level indicators or labels should provide guidance on acceptable levels. Information about the effect on level of equipment operating condition (off, on, hot, cold, etc.) should be provided.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.8.2.10.7 Zone banding. Zone banding e.g. use of pattern or color coding to show a critical range(s) on the scale should be considered when certain operating conditions should normally fall within this range (3.3.1.3.2, Pattern or color-coding/zone banding).

2.8.2.10.8 Direct-reading sightglasses. Direct-reading sightglasses should be marked to show which is the “up” direction to avoid an incorrect level indication if installed upside-down.

2.8.2.11 Drain points/bleed fittings

2.8.2.11.1 Use of drains. Drains should be provided on all fluid tanks and systems, fluid filled cases or pans, filter systems, float chambers, and other items which are designed or likely to contain fluid that would otherwise be difficult to remove.

2.8.2.11.2 Standardized drain fittings. Drain fittings should be limited to a few types and sizes which should be standardized according to application throughout the system.

2.8.2.11.3 Use of drain plugs. Valves or petcocks in preference to drain plugs. Where drain plugs are used, they should require only common hand tools for operation, and design must ensure adequate tool and work clearance for operation.

2.8.2.11.4 Labeling drain cocks or valves. Drain cocks or valves should be clearly labeled to indicate open and closed positions, and the direction of movement required to open.

2.8.2.11.5 Drain cock motion. Drain cocks should always close with clockwise motion and open with counterclockwise motion.

2.8.2.11.6 Instruction plates. Instruction plates should be provided as necessary to ensure that the system is properly prepared prior to draining.

2.8.2.11.7 Drain points. Drain points should be designed, located, and installed:

- a. Where they are readily reachable and operable by the technician.
- b. So fluid will not drain or spill on equipment or personnel.
- c. At the lowest point in the system when complete draining is required or when separation of fluids is desired.
- d. At other points in the system as required to permit selective draining or bleeding to facilitate maintenance procedures.
- e. To permit drainage directly into a waste container without use of separate adapters or piping.
- f. So fuel or other combustible fluids cannot run down to or collect in the starter, exhaust, or other hazardous areas.

2.8.2.12 Locating and grouping lubrication points

2.8.2.12.1 Accessibility of lubrication points. Lubrication points should be located so that they are easily accessible. Lead tubes or extended fittings should be provided if required to avoid equipment disassembly or locating a lubrication point in a hard to reach area.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.8.2.12.2 Cases, covers, and equipment removal. The need to remove cases, covers, or other pieces of equipment to obtain access to lubrication points should be avoided by:

- a. Locating oil dipsticks and other such level indicators so that they may be fully withdrawn without touching other pieces of equipment.
- b. Locating lubrication test points close to corresponding lubrication add points, if possible.
- c. Where possible, providing a central lubrication point or grouping of points for applying lubricant to all areas which require lubrication within a system, subsystem, or major component.
- d. The oil quantity dipsticks should be placed in an accessible location.

2.8.2.13 Service for fuses. The following design features should be used to support easy identification and replacement of failed fuses

- a. To the degree practical, fuses should be standardized.
- b. Fuses should be mounted on the front panel with the failure easily identified. They should be grouped in a minimum number of central, readily accessible locations.
- c. Fuses in removable fuse holders should be replaceable by maintainers without using tools. Fuse holder cups or caps should be of quick-disconnect rather than screw-in type and should be easily and safely removable by hand.
- d. Spare fuses should be located near fuse holders.
- e. Fuse values and functions should be clearly indicated by labels.

2.8.2.14 Batteries. The following design features should be used to support ready identification and replacement or recharging of discharged batteries:

- a. The state of battery charge should be indicated or readily determinable. Labels should indicate acceptable levels associated with the charge.
- b. Adequate accessibility should be provided for replenishing the electrolyte or replacing the battery. These operations should be performed by one person with a minimum of tools.
- c. Caps should be provided so that battery terminals cannot contact metal surfaces during replacement.

2.8.2.15 Adjustment points and controls. The following design features should be used to support the use of adjustment points and controls for easy compensation for wear and degradation:

- a. Labels or other features should clearly indicate the direction, degree, and effect of the adjustment.
- b. Adjustment controls should be conveniently accessed and operated. They should be grouped either on a single panel or on the face of the equipment.
- c. Controls with extremely sensitive or complicated adjustments should be avoided. Adjustments should be independent of each other whenever possible.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- d. Equipment design should avoid the need for adjustment whenever possible. Parts subject to wear should be provided with compensation that is either automatic or readily performed manually.

2.8.2.16 Labeling and coding

2.8.2.16.1 Lubrication, fuel, and other filling points. Lubrication, fuel, and other filling points should be labeled with the type of lubricant or other material which is being replaced or replenished. A log and instructions for lubrication schedule should be included where possible.

2.8.2.16.2 Servicing instruction points. Servicing instruction plates should be provided adjacent to servicing points.

2.8.2.16.3 Overflow mechanisms. Cautions (or overflow mechanisms) should be provided adjacent to lubrication points where excess lubrication is unwanted.

2.8.2.16.4 Drain systems. Drain systems should be labeled to indicate proper position of equipment for draining.

2.8.2.16.5 Service points. Service points should be clearly distinguished from other fittings or breathing holes not to be lubricated or otherwise serviced

2.9 Test equipment design

2.9.1 Types of test equipment. Four general types of test equipment are used in maintenance tasks:

- a. Built-in test equipment is an integral part of the prime equipment. It may be a complex automatic checker or a simple voltmeter with external leads.
- b. Go, no-go test equipment provides only one of two alternative answers to any question. It tells only whether a given signal is in or out of tolerance.
- c. Automatic test equipment checks two or more signals in sequence without the intervention of a technician. The test usually stops when the first out-of-tolerance signal is detected.
- d. Collating test equipment presents the results of two or more checks as a single display. For example, a light may come on only if a number of different signals are in tolerance.

2.9.2 Design goals for test equipment. All test equipment should be designed to satisfy the following functions:

- a. Simplify the job of the on-line maintenance technician.
- b. Reduce the preparation or turn-around time for systems.
- c. Reduce total maintenance costs.
- d. Satisfy as many related testing requirements as practical.
- e. Keep number of required testers and need for specialized testers to a minimum.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- f. Be easily checked to determine that it is calibrated and functioning properly and allow easy calibration when needed; not require excessive or overly costly test equipment.

2.9.3 Selection of Test Equipment. Test equipment should be designed and selected so that it is easy, fast, and safe to use. The type of test equipment to be used should be decided upon in the early stages of prime equipment design. Actual selection of test equipment should be based on the following:

- a. The mission and operational characteristics of the equipment.
- b. The anticipated reliability of the equipment.
- c. Personnel available.
- d. Current maintenance system including procedures policies, symbols, codes, and test equipment familiar to the user.
- e. Operational (physical) environment.
- f. Task requirements including maintenance task assignment and transport of equipment to and from storage.
- g. Logistics support requirements.
- h. Development time and costs.

2.9.3.1 Advantages and disadvantages of types of test equipment. Advantages and disadvantages of various types of test equipment are listed below in Table 2.9.1, Advantages and disadvantages of test equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Table 2.9.1. Advantages and disadvantages of types of test equipment.

Built-in Test Equipment

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Less likely than portable test equipment to be lost or damaged. • Available when needed. • No special storage facilities are required • Transportation to the prime equipment for use in maintenance is not required • Minimizes downtime required to trouble-shoot equipment; decreases service-induced failures and possible injury to maintainer by allowing fault isolation to be performed without needless probing into interior of equipment. • Assures that modifications of prime equipment are made concurrently with integral test facilities. • May result in earlier identification of performance degradation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Likely to add to the weight and space requirements of the prime equipment. • More built-in test equipment may be required because a separate item is usually required for each prime equipment. • Requires additional self checking features to ensure that degradation of test facilities does not go unnoticed • Transportation of built-in test equipment to a point for convenient calibration may be more difficult than transportation of portable test equipment. • Permanent installation of the test equipment may increase the complexity of wiring for the system and may even increase the amount of required maintenance for the prime equipment. • May be relatively inflexible.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Table 2.9.1. Advantages and disadvantages of types of test equipment. (continued)

Go, No-Go Test Equipment	
Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Presents information that is clear and unambiguous. • Usually easy to read. • Can simplify difficult tasks such as balancing circuits or checking complex wave shapes. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unique circuitry usually required for each signal value to be tested. Sometimes, however, ordinary displays can be converted to go, no-go by appropriate use of reference scales, such as a colored section on a meter dial. • The increase in the number and complexity of circuits usually required adds to initial cost and development time; it is also likely to increase the rate of test equipment breakdown. • Except in long, fast check sequences, go, no-go equipment is of relatively little help to the technician in checking common voltages or simple wave shapes. • Likely to require modification when prime equipment is modified. A special model may be required for each model of prime equipment.
Automatic Test Equipment	
Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can make a rapid sequence of checks with little or no chance of omitting any steps. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cost, size, weight, and maintenance requirements are relatively high. • This type of equipment is relatively specialized, with little versatility. • Must almost necessarily have self-checking features to detect test equipment malfunctioning. This adds to cost and to problems of maintaining the test equipment. • More likely to require modification when prime equipment is modified. A special model may be required for each model of prime equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Table 2.9.1. Advantages and disadvantages of types of test equipment. (continued)**Collating Test Equipment**

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce the number of displays the technician must read, thereby reducing check times and probably reducing errors. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Similar to those for go, no-go and automatic test equipment.

Collating test equipment should indicate not only that all signals are or are not in tolerance; it should also provide an indication of which signal, if any, is out of tolerance. If only the collated display is presented, the equipment will not be an aid to troubleshooting.

2.9.4 Controls and displays for test equipment. Controls and displays required on test equipment should be kept to a minimum. They should also adhere to the design guidelines specified in Section 2.5.

2.9.5 Use of labels. Every item on the test equipment that the technician must recognize, read, or use should be labeled. A label should be placed on the cover or case of the set that states its name and purpose, use or function, the location where it is to be stored, the correct power source, and the precautions to be observed in using it.

2.9.4.1 Design of labels for test equipment. Labels should:

- a. Be placed consistently above or below the associated panel elements with the major panel identifier top-most on the panel.
- b. Be closer to the element being identified than to any other element.
- c. Use a size-graduated hierarchical structure that emphasizes functional relationships of indicators and controls where applicable.

2.9.5 Steps to operate test equipment. The number and complexity of steps required to operate the test equipment should be minimal. This may be accomplished by "ganging" certain controls or by making certain operations automatic.

2.9.6 Operating instructions. Operating instructions for test equipment should be available to the technician, clearly written, and easily understandable. Instructions for operating portable test equipment should be provided on the face of the test equipment, in a lid, or in a special compartment. Instructions should be directly readable while test equipment is being operated. Periodic calibration records including tolerance check values should be placarded on the equipment where appropriate. Where applicable the instructions should include a reminder to calibrate the equipment and calibration procedures.

2.9.7 Test equipment leads and probes. Test equipment leads should be made retractable or should be removable. Test probes should be provided with handles long enough to be held comfortably and with contact points strong enough to prevent breaking:

2.9.7.1 Storage space. Test equipment should provide adequate storage space in the lid or cover for small removable items such as test leads, adapters, probes, or extensions. Fasteners or holders should be provided in the integral storage space to secure these items.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.9.8 Error reduction. Test equipment should be designed either to prevent the technician from making errors or warn him of his errors.

2.9.8.1 Incorrect manipulation. Devices should be provided that will indicate whether the correct manipulation has been performed before the actual testing is done. For example, a signal or warning light on the test equipment display panel should light if an incorrect control is used.

2.9.9 Circuit breakers. Circuit breakers should be grounded on all test equipment to safeguard against damage if the wrong switch or jack position is used.

2.9.10 Fail-safe features. Fail-safe features should be incorporated into the test equipment to minimize the danger to the technician and equipment in case of equipment failure.

2.9.11 Test equipment ruggedness. Test equipment should be built to withstand the rigors of the job.

2.9.12 Test equipment rests and stands. When required to support operations or maintenance functions, rests or stands should be provided on which units can be placed. These stands should include space for test equipment, tools, technical orders and manuals. When permitted by design requirements, such rests or stands shall be part of the basic unit, rack, or console chassis.

2.9.12 Electrical connections

2.9.12.1 Selector switches. Selector switches should be used on test equipment instead of many plug-in connections (if the effects of switching will not degrade information desired).

2.9.12.2 Full view of relevant items. Test points, adjustment points, cable end connections, and labels should be in full view of the technician making connections or adjustments at that point.

2.9.12.3 Work position. The technician should not be required to assume an awkward position to make connections.

2.9.13 Test equipment operation and maintenance.

2.9.13.1 Operation by one technician. Test equipment should be designed for operation by one technician.

2.9.13.2 Go, no-go indicator. Test equipment should be easily calibrated or equipped with a go, no-go indicator or simple check to determine whether the instrument requires calibration or is malfunctioning.

2.9.13.3 Warm-up indicator. A warm-up indicator should be provided if applicable. Required warm-up time should be shown clearly near the display if no visual signal is provided.

2.9.13.4 Simple accuracy check. A simple check for testing the accuracy of results should be incorporated into the test equipment. .

2.9.13.5 Conversion tables. Conversion tables should be attached to test equipment when they are required (preferably such conversions should be made by selecting an option in the test equipment itself.) Standards and tolerances should be explicitly indicated by or on the test equipment.

2.9.13.6 Adjustments. Adjustments required by technicians should be limited to only those that are essential. They should be made by means of "low-go-high" type indicators. Feedback information to the

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

technician should be by qualitative, positive signaling means, such as color-code signals and zero-center meters.

2.9.13.7 Misalignment. Controls and displays should be designed to prevent misalignment which may be caused by vibration, service use, or accidental contact.

2.9.13.8 Automatic shut-off. Automatic shut-off capability should be built into the test equipment to insure the equipment is turned off when not in use.

2.9.13.9 Power switches off when lid closed. Power switches should shut off automatically when instrument's lid is closed. The test equipment display panel should include a warning light which is lit during operation and which turns off when equipment is secured.

2.9.14 Safety

2.9.14.1 Shielding moving or cutting parts. Test equipment should be designed so that all exposed moving and cutting parts are shielded.

2.9.14.2 Covering protrusions. Protrusions, rails, corners, etc. that technicians might come into contact with on the test equipment should be covered with rubber or other appropriate materials.

2.9.14.3 High voltages. Internal controls should be located away from dangerous voltages. High voltage areas should be insulated or guarded.

2.9.14.4 Warning of hazards. Wherever a potential hazard exists, adequate warning should be provided

2.10 Cover, case, and shield design

Covers, cases, and shields refer to all protective and configuration devices which guard equipment from damage during shipping or during operation and maintenance on the job site. For standards relating to cover design and accessibility see Section 2.4.13, Access covers, in this document. Other relevant standards may be found in Section 2.11, Fastener design and application, Section 2.13, Handle and grasp area design, and Section 3.0, Workspace, storage, and workshop design, of this document.

2.10.1 Functions of covers, cases, and shields. When necessary to use, covers, cases, and shields should:

- a. Maintain the degree of enclosure required by structural, operational, or environmental protection or control.
- b. Divide enclosures into sections which differ because of temperature or ventilation control, types of cleaning methods to be used, etc.
- c. Protect personnel from coming into contact with dangerous electrical or mechanical parts.
- d. Protect moving parts, fuels, lubricants, etc. from dust, dirt, moisture, etc.
- e. Protect delicate or sensitive equipment from damage by movements of personnel, shifting of cargo of loose objects, or actions involved in the installation and maintenance of nearby assemblies.
- f. Provide access whenever frequent maintenance operations would otherwise require removing the entire case or cover or dismantling an item of equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.10.2 Size/weight and ease of movement. Covers, cases, and shields should be:

- a. Lightweight, if possible, but allow the degree of accessibility required.
- b. Openable, removable, and transportable by one hand, one individual, or, at most, two individuals, in that order of preference.
- c. Provided with lifting eyes and planned for crane handling if more than 100 lbs.
- d. Provided with handles or tool grips if heavy or difficult to open or move.
- e. Designed to allow sufficient clearance around enclosed components to minimize damage to these components and to avoid requirements for extremely fine or careful positioning end handling.
- f. Designed and located so that bulkheads, brackets, or other units will not interfere with operation of the cover or case and so the cover or case, when opened, will not interfere with other maintenance operations.
- g. Easy to use, in terms of equipment accessibility for maintenance (for example, quick release and connection covers, cases and shields, should be used with equipment that is frequently tested or adjusted).

2.10.3 Shape. Covers, cases, and shields should:

- a. Be whatever shape is necessary to accomplish the degree of enclosure, allow the degree of accessibility, and provide the clearances required.
- b. Make obvious, if possible, the manner in which the item must be positioned or mounted.
- c. Make obvious, if possible, correct orientation to minimize damage to delicate components during removal or insertion.
- d. Be free from sharp edges or protrusions which could injure personnel or damage lines and wires.
- e. Be free of indentations or settling areas on top surfaces, to reduce rust, corrosion, and the accumulation of dirt and grease.

2.10.4 Mounting. Covers, cases, and shields should be designed, located, and mounted so they:

- a. Do not bear any part of the structural load. It should not be necessary to support, download, or disassemble any equipment to remove the item.
- b. Are completely removable and replaceable in case of damage. Irregular extensions and accessories should be readily removable.
- c. Can be opened or removed as necessary when the equipment system is completely assembled and auxiliary equipment has been installed.
- d. Do not cause the equipment to become unbalanced when opened. Props, retainers, or other support should be provided where required to prevent this.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- e. Do not obscure or interfere with controls, displays, test points, or connections related to work within the access or enclosure, when in the open position.
- f. Are provided with adequate stops and retainers to prevent them from swinging into or being dropped on fragile equipment or personnel.
- g. Are provided with locking devices or retainer bars to lock them in the open position if they might otherwise fall or shut and cause damage, injury, or inconvenience (This is particularly necessary in strong wind conditions.)

2.10.5 Fasteners. Fasteners for covers, cases, and shields should be selected, applied, and mounted so that:

- a. They optimally satisfy the applicable Guidelines in Section 1.11, Fastener design and application, in this document.
- b. Maximum use is made of hinges and latches or catches to minimize the number of fasteners and requirements for handling and stowing covers and cases.
- c. Fasteners for a given item or identical items are interchangeable, i.e., are the same type, size, diameter, and pitch of thread.
- d. Fasteners align themselves with their retaining catches, nuts, blocks, or inserts without sticking and without damage to their threads or latches.
- e. The cover or case will not open or loosen automatically under whatever stress, vibration, or other conditions are expectable.
- f. It is obvious when a cover or case is not in place or securely fastened. Where feasible, fasteners should be spring-loaded so they stand out or the cover itself stays ajar when not secure.

2.10.6 Labeling. Labels and markings on covers and cases should

- a. Provide opening, removal, or positioning instructions, if methods for accomplishing these are not obvious from the design.
- b. Provide stock references so that covers, cases, and shields can be replaced when damaged.
- c. Adequately reveal the functions of units behind the enclosure and/or the functions which are to be performed through the access, such as "Battery," "Fuel Pump," "Oil Here," etc.
- d. Adequately warn against dangers or hazards involved in removing the cover or case or working within the enclosure.
- e. Provide the proper orientation or connection of units, service equipment, etc. to go through the opening, if this is not clear or visible.
- f. Not provide instructions which are subject to revision or change such as preventive maintenance instructions,

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- g. If use is required with the door open, be placed so that they will not be obscured by the open door (for example, on the structure behind or to the side of the access.) If instructions applying to a covered item are lettered on a hinged door, the lettering should be oriented to be read by the maintainer when the door is opened.

2.10.7 Types of covers, cases, and shields

2.10.7.1 Hinged doors, hoods, and caps. Hinges should be considered since they allow the fastest and easiest access, reduces the number of fasteners required, supports the cover so the technician does not have to handle it, and makes it unnecessary to disconnect wires or components mounted on the cover before entering the access. This type of cover, however, requires "swinging space," and may interfere with other operations or components.

2.10.7.2 Sliding doors or caps. Although large sliding doors may create structural design problems, sliding doors should be considered where "swinging space" is limited. Small, sliding caps are particularly useful for small accesses that do not require a close seal.

2.10.7.3 Removable doors, plates, or caps. Removable doors, plates, or caps may be useful where there are space limitations since they require little space for opening and, once removed, do not interfere with work space; however, their handling requires time and effort (searching, bending, reaching, etc.).

2.10.7.4 Removable panels or sections. Removable panels or sections may be useful when access to whole sides of a cabinet or equipment is needed. They discourage non-maintenance personnel from opening the access and do not require "swinging space;" however, they may be damaged easily and may be awkward to handle. They may also interfere with maintenance activities. (1.10.3.7.d)

2.10.8 Hinged doors, hoods, and caps

2.10.8.1 Double-hinged or split doors. Double-hinged or split doors should be used if opening space is a problem.

2.10.8.2 Placement of hinges when door is to stay open without being held. Hinges should be placed on the bottom; biased; or a prop, catch, or latch should be provided if the door is to stay open without being held.

2.10.8.3 Direction of opening. Adjacent hinged doors should open in opposite directions to maximize accessibility, and cabinets should be arranged so that functionally related cabinets are adjacent and open in opposite directions.

2.10.8.4 Hinged caps over service or test points. Hinged caps over service or test points should be designed not to interfere with the insertion or attachment of service or test equipment.

2.10.8.5 Stops and retainers. Stops, retainers, etc. should be provided when needed to prevent the door from swinging into adjacent displays, controls, or fragile components, and to prevent springing the hinges.

2.10.9 Sliding doors and caps

2.10.9.1 Positive locking. Sliding doors and caps should lock positively.

2.10.9.2 Jamming or sticking. Sliding doors and caps should be designed to avoid jamming or sticking.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.10.9.3 No tools for operation. Sliding doors and caps should be easy to use and should not require tools for operation (unless limited or restricted access is intended).

2.10.9.4 Non interference. Their movement should not interfere with, damage, or have the potential for harmful contact with wires or other equipment items.

2.10.10 Removable doors, plates, and caps

2.10.10.1 Tongue and slot catches. Maximum use should be made of tongue and slot or similar catches for small plates, doors, and caps to minimize the number of fasteners needed .

2.11 Fastener design and application

Fastener refers to a device used to join two or more parts, components, or units together. Fasteners include:

- a. Quick disconnects.
- b. Latches and catches.
- c. Captive fasteners.
- d. Combination head-bolts and screws.
- e. Regular screws.
- f. Internal wrenching screws and bolts.
- g. Rivets.

2.11.1 Criteria for fastener design, selection, and application. Fasteners should be designed, selected and used based on:

- a. Durability.
- b. Speed and ease of operation.
- c. Ease of replacement.
- d. Stress and environmental factors the fasteners must withstand.
- e. Work space, tool clearance, and wrenching space around the fastener.
- f. Types of tools required for operation of the fastener, as a function of fastener type, application, and location.
- g. Types and varieties of fasteners being used elsewhere in the system, or commonly used by the using utility.
- h. The frequency with which the fasteners will be operated.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- i. The time requirements of tasks involving operation of the fasteners.

2.11.2 Reducing variety and number of fasteners and tools required.

2.11.2.1 Minimizing types and sizes of fasteners. The number of types and sizes of fasteners used within a system should be minimized by:

- a. Using the same type and size of fastener for the same application (e.g., all mounting bolts for a given type of item).
- b. Avoiding requirements for special or close tolerance fasteners.

2.11.2.2 Reducing number of different torque requirements. The number of different torque requirements used within a system should be minimized by:

- a. Using only a few basic values.
- b. Keying values used to clearly differing types, sizes, or coded fasteners.
- c. Where precise torquing is required, providing clearance for wrenches or sockets with variable torque settings.

2.11.2.3 Minimizing types of tools required. The number of tool types and sizes that are needed for fastener operation should be minimized.

2.11.2.4 Use of hinges, catches, etc. The use of hinges, catches, latches, and quick disconnect fasteners should be maximized to reduce the number of fasteners required.

2.11.2.5 Use of large fasteners. A few large fasteners should be used rather than many smaller ones (except where many are needed to maintain a fluid or air-tight seat).

2.11.2.6 Maximum of four fasteners. No more than four fasteners should be used to mount a unit. (A common fault is to use too many fasteners when a more rigid construction is preferred.)

2.11.2.7 Location for each fastener type obvious. When more than one size or type of fastener is used on the same equipment or cover, the fastener/equipment/cover should permit the maintainer to easily distinguish the intended location of each type of fastener.

2.11.3 Varying fastener size and shape to avoid improper connection. Screws, bolts, and units of different thread sizes should be clearly different in physical size or shape of the head to preclude being interchanged. This requirement may increase the number of types and sizes used.

2.11.4 Fastener fabrication. Fastener fabrication should:

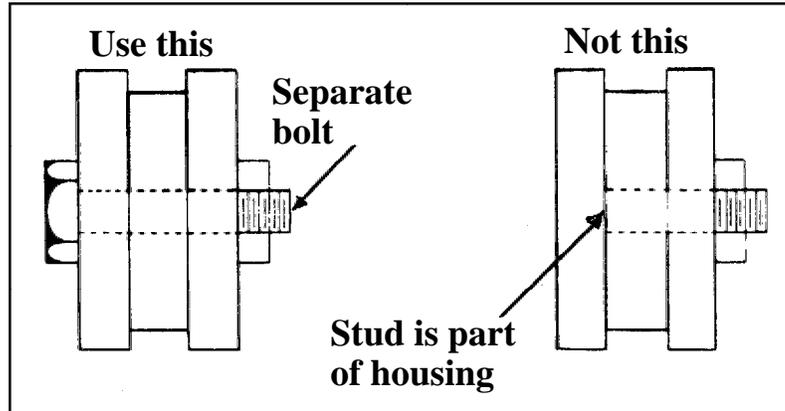
- a. Use corrosion-resistant materials (e.g., stainless, galvanized, cadmium-coated, non-ferrous).
- b. Not use aluminum alloy threaded into aluminum alloy parts.
- c. Not use materials that cause galvanic action (e.g., a titanium fastener used with magnesium would cause galvanic corrosion).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

d. Use metals where high tensile or shear strength is required.

2.11.5 Ease of replacing damaged fasteners. Ease of replacing stripped, worn, or damaged fasteners should be a design consideration. Fasteners, which are part of a unit's housing, should be avoided (See also Figure 2.11.1, Example of proper and improper design of bolt fastener).

Figure 2.11.1. Example of proper and improper design of bolt fastener.



2.11.6 Mounting fasteners. Fasteners should be mounted so that:

- a. Fastener mounting holes or other tolerances are large enough to allow "starting" of fasteners without perfect alignment.
- b. Hinges, catches, latches, locks, and other quick disconnect devices are attached by small bolts or screws, not rivets; however, the bolts or screws should not be so small that they are difficult to manipulate.
- c. Bolts should have the head up so they will stay in position if the nut falls off.
- d. Nuts and bolts (particularly those which are frequently operated or poorly accessible) are mounted so they can be operated with one hand or one tool by:
 - Providing recesses to hold either the nut or bolt.
 - Semi-permanently attaching either the nut or bolt.
 - Using double nuts on terminal boards and similar applications.
 - Using nut plates, gang-channeling, or floating nuts.

2.11.7 Fastener location. Fasteners should be located so they:

- a. Can be operated without prior removal of other parts or units.
- b. Can be operated with minimum interference from other structures.
- c. Do not interfere with each other or other components.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- d. Do not constitute a hazard to personnel, wires, or hoses.
- e. Are surrounded by adequate hand or tool clearance for easy operation.

2.11.8 Fastener coding. Fasteners should be coded so that:

- a. All external fasteners which are manipulated during normal maintenance provide strong color contrast with the color of the surface on which they appear.
- b. All other external fasteners and assembly screws are of the same color as the surface on which they appear.
- c. The heads of "special" bolts and screws are color- or stamp-coded to ensure that they are properly handled and are replaced by identical fasteners.
- d. Only markings which designate the size, type, or torque value of the fastener are used. Manufacturers' names or trademarks should be omitted.
- e. Fastener markings are etched or embossed to withstand exposure to chemicals, fuels, weather, or other operational conditions.
- f. One fastener marking code is used throughout the system. This code should be determined and standardized ahead of time, and it should conform to prevailing standard practices.

2.11.9 Tool-actuated fasteners

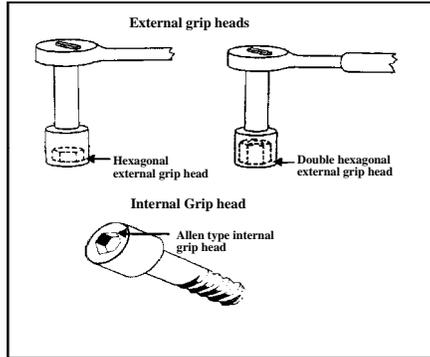
2.11.9.1 High torque fasteners. External hexagonal or external double hexagonal grip heads should be provided on all machine screws, bolts, or other fasteners requiring more than 14 Nm (10 ft-lb) of torque. When external grip heads cannot meet the mechanical function or personal safety requirements, or in limited access situations, and where use is protected from accumulation of foreign material, internal grip heads may be used. Where used, internal grip heads should of the Allen-head-type (See also Figure 2.11.2, Examples of external and internal grip heads).

2.11.9.2 Low torque fasteners. Hexagonal-type internal grip head, hexagonal-type external grip head, or combination-head (hex or straight-slot internal grip and hex-type external grip head) fasteners should be used where less than 14 Nm (10 ft-lb) of torque is required; however, internal-grip head fasteners should only be used where a straight or convex smooth surface is required for mechanical function or for personnel safety and where use is protected from accumulation of foreign material. Straight-slot or cross-recess type internal grip head fasteners should not be provided except as wood fasteners or where that type of fastener is provided on standard commercial items.

2.11.9.3 Torque labeling. When fasteners torquing to meet shielding, thermal conductance, or other constraints is required, an instructional label or placard should be provided in reasonable proximity to fasteners. The label should specify required torque value and torquing sequence as well as meet the requirements for labels specified in Section 2.3, Labeling, marking, and coding.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.11.2. Examples of external and internal grip heads..



2.11.9.4 Tool access. Direct tool access should be provided to allow for torquing without the use of irregular extensions (See also Section 1.4, Equipment accessibility, of this document).

2.11.9.4.1 Tool head clearance. When only tool head access is required a 2.5 cm (1 in.) clearance should be provided around the fastener or drive stud for insertion, actuation, and removal of the drive end of the tool.

2.11.9.4.2 Tool handle clearance. A minimum of 76 mm (3 in.) should be provided for clearance between a tool handle engaged on a fastener or drive stud and the nearest piece of hardware through a full 180° sweep envelope.

2.11.9.4.3 Tool head-to-fastener engagement height. The tool socket/fastener head engagement height should be a minimum of 70 (0.3 in.) for single height grip heads and 140 mm (0.6 in.) for double height grip heads.

2.11.9.4.4 Tool handle offset. The maximum tool offset between the tool handle and the tool head should be 355 mm (14 in.)

2.11.10 Types of fasteners

2.11.10.1 Quick release fasteners (Cowl or panel fasteners). These are fast and easy to use, require no tools, may be operated with one hand, and are very good for securing plug-in components, small components, and covers. However, their holding power is low and they cannot be used where a smooth surface is required. These fasteners should:

- a. Be carefully evaluated on the basis of type and application.
- b. Be used wherever possible for components that must be frequently dismantled or removed such as during testing and adjusting.
- c. Fasten and release easily, without the use of tools.
- d. Fasten or unfasten in a maximum of one complete turn.
- e. Clearly indicate when they are not correctly engaged.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

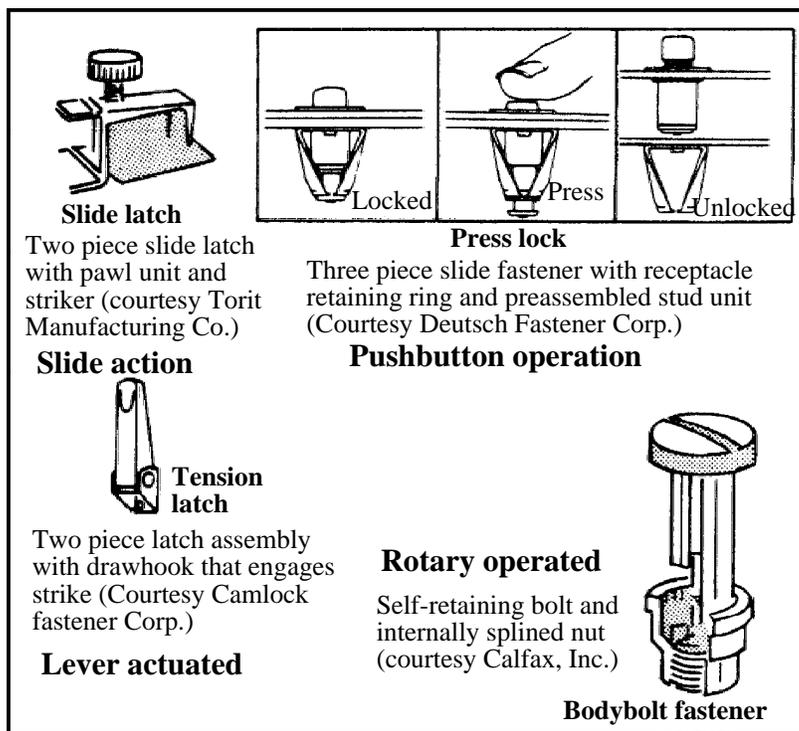
- f. Should be located, shaped, sized, or coded so that only the correct male section may be attached (See also Figure 2.11.3, Examples of quick-release type fasteners).

2.11.10.2 Latches and clamps. These are very fast and easy to use, require no tools, have good holding power, and are especially good for large units, panels, covers, and cases. They cannot be used where a smooth surface is required.

Latches should:

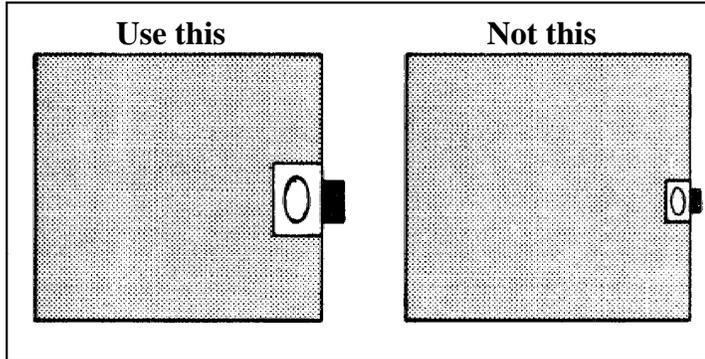
- a. Have Long latch catches should be provided so that accidental springing is minimized (See also Figure 2.11.4, Example of effective latch catch fastener).

Figure 2.11.3. Examples of quick-release type fasteners.



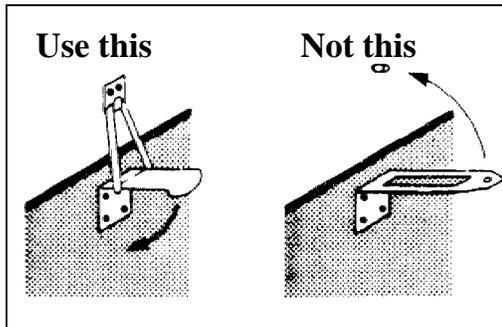
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.11.4. Example of effective latch catch fastener.



- b. Along with their catches, be located and positioned so they will not open accidentally under usual operating conditions (See also Figure 2.11.5, Example of effective positioning of latches).

Figure 2.11.5. Example of effective positioning of latches.

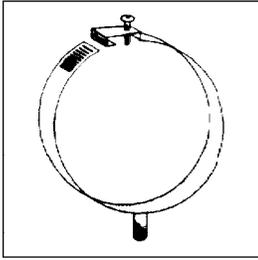


- c. Have spring-loaded catches so they do not require positive locking, but lock on contact.
- d. Use a latch loop and locking action if positive locking is necessary to meet structural or stress requirements.
- e. When a handle is used, have the latch release located on or near the handle so that only one hand is needed for operation.

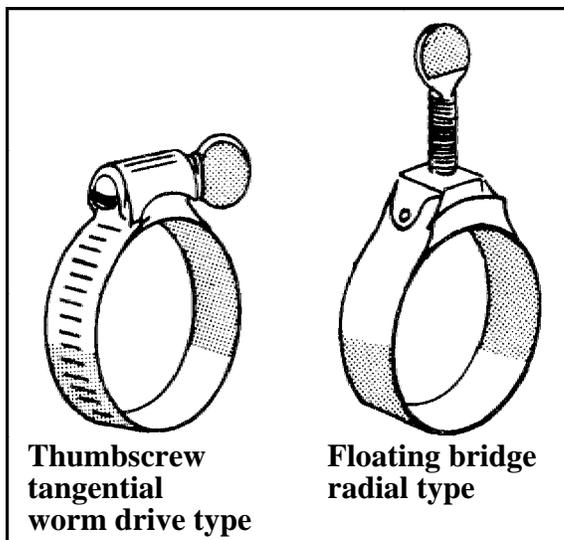
Clamps should:

- a. Be of the quick release type where not subjected to excessive force (See also Figure 2.11.6, Examples of quick-release clamp).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.11.6. Example of quick-release clamp.

- b. Only require one hand operation where more holding force is required (See also Figure 2.11.7, Example of clamp requiring one hand operation).

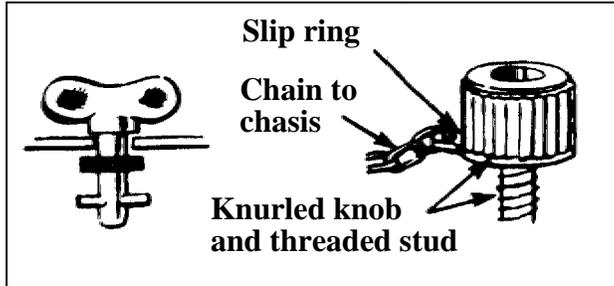
Figure 2.11.7. Example of clamp requiring one hand operation.

2.11.10.3 Captive fasteners. These are slower and more difficult to use (depending upon type), and require use of common (usually) hand tools; however, they stay in place, save the time spent handling and looking for bolts and screws, and require only one-handed operation. Captive fasteners should:

- a. Be used wherever lost screws, bolts, or nuts might cause a malfunction or result in excessive maintenance time.
- b. Be operable by hand or common hand tools should be used.
- c. Be easily replaceable in case of damage.
- d. Be self-locking and have a spring-loaded action when they are the quarter-turn type (See also Figure 2.11.8, Example of captive fasteners).

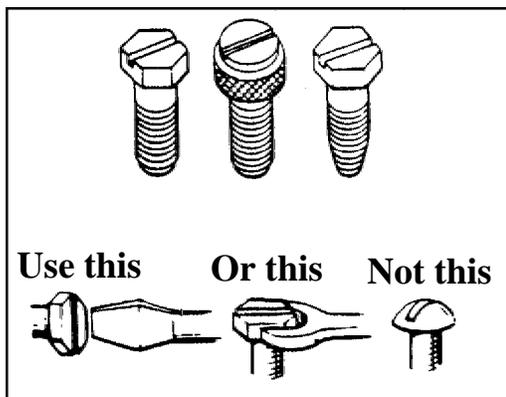
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.11.8. Example of captive fasteners. (Ex. 1.11.7)



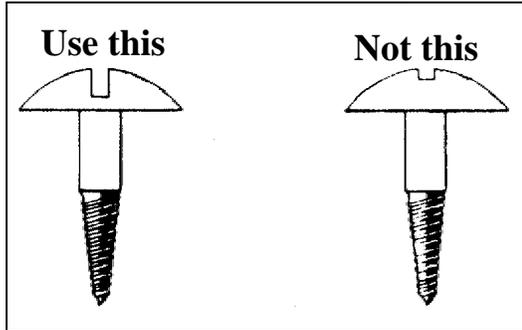
2.11.10.4 Combination head-bolts and screws. These should be used in preference to other screws or bolts simply because they may be operated more rapidly with either a wrench or a screwdriver. This allows use of the more convenient tool and reduces the possibility of slot damage and stuck fasteners. In general, slotted, hexagonal heads are preferable to knurled and slotted heads (See also Figure 2.11.9, Examples of combination head bolts and screws and slotted hexagon screws).

Figure 2.11.9. Examples of combination head bolts and screws and slotted hexagon screws.



2.11.10.5 Regular screws. Round, square, or flatheaded screws require more time and are more subject to loss, slot damage, stripping, and misapplication than combination head bolts and screws; but they require less wrenching space, only one-handed action to operate, and do not involve a number of extra parts. Square-headed screws are generally preferable to round or flat since they provide better tool contact, are less subject to slot damage, and may be removed with pliers. When used, regular screws should:

- a. Require less than 10 turns for lightening or loosening.
- b. When tightened, fully engage to a distance at least equal to its diameter.
- c. Have deep slots on screw heads to minimize slot damage and tool slippage (See also Figure 2.11.10, Example of deep-slotted screw heads).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.11.10. Example of deep-slotted screw heads.**

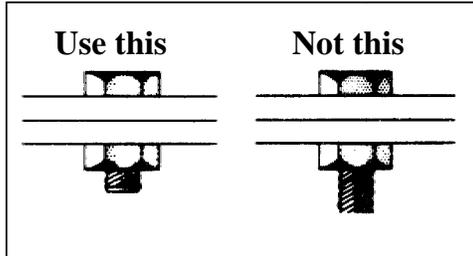
- d. Be used only when screwdrivers may be used in a straight-in fashion.
- e. Not require use of offset screw drivers.
- f. Have a tool guide in the assembly if a screw must be operated blindly.
- g. Have fine thread screws when used for pressurized units.
- h. Be countersunk only where necessary to provide a smooth surface.
- i. Be round-head rather than flat-head when used on panels less than 3/32 inch thick, so that they will not rip through the panel.
- j. If self-tapping, have one type of head and be of one size, or a minimum number of sizes.

2.11.10.6 Bolts and nuts. Bolts are usually slow and difficult to use. They require two-handed operation, access to both ends of the bolt, and often use of two tools. They also require precise movements in starting nuts and have many loose parts to handle and lose (nuts, washers, etc.).

Latches should: have long latch catches should be provided so that accidental springing is minimized (See also Figure 2.11.4, Example of effective latch catch fastener).

2.11.10.6.1 Bolts:

- a. Bolt length should not be more than required for a given purpose (See also Figure 2.11.11, Example of appropriate bolt length). When tightened, the bolt should extend a minimum of two threads beyond the nut.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.11.11. Example of appropriate bolt length.** (Ex. 1.1.10)

- b. The number of turns to tighten a bolt should be less than 10.
- c. When tightened, the bolt should extend a minimum of two threads beyond the nut.
- d. Hexagonal-head bolts should be used generally, and especially for high torque usage.
- e. Left-hand threads should be used only when stress conditions require; and both bolts and nuts should be clearly identifiable by marking, shape, or color.
- f. Self-locking bolts (in tapped holes) should be used only when one surface must be smooth or is inaccessible and temperatures will be below 121°C (250° F).

2.11.10.6.2 Nuts:

- a. Regular hexagonal nuts are preferred, in a few easily distinguishable sizes.
- b. Different sizes of nuts should be used for different thread requirements.
- c. Wing or knurled nuts, which require no tools, should be used for low tension applications. Wing nuts are the easier to use.
- d. Self-sealing nuts should be used for fastening equipment to fluid tanks to prevent leaking around fastener (See also Figure 2.11.12, Example of self-sealing nut.).
- e. Lock nuts may be used for mounting light components; but they must withstand heat requirements, and cannot be used where fallen nuts could damage equipment (See also Figure 2.11.13, Example of lock nut).
- f. Clinch nuts should be incapable of rotating or moving with respect to the surface on which they are mounted (See also Figure 2.11.14, Example of a clinch nut).
- g. Floating nuts should have an allowable shift of only plus or minus 1.6 mm (1/16) inch (See also Figure 2.11.15, Example of a floating nut).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.11.12. Example of self-sealing nut.

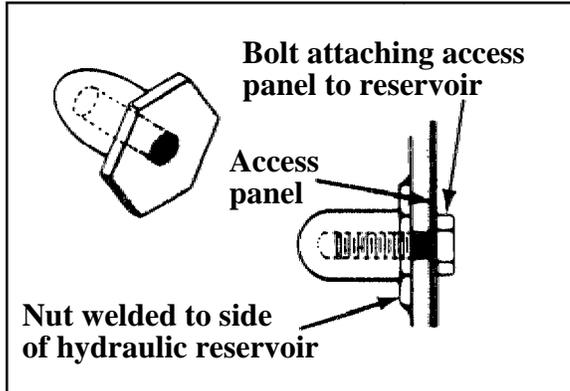


Figure 2.11.13. Example of lock nut.

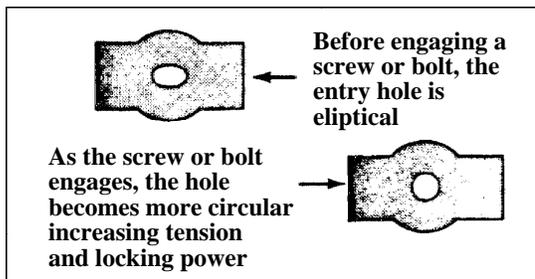


Figure 2.11.14. Example of a clinch nut.

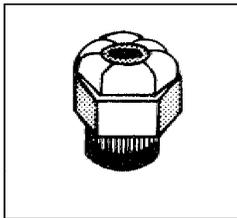
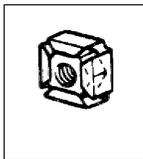


Figure 2.11.15. Example of floating nut.



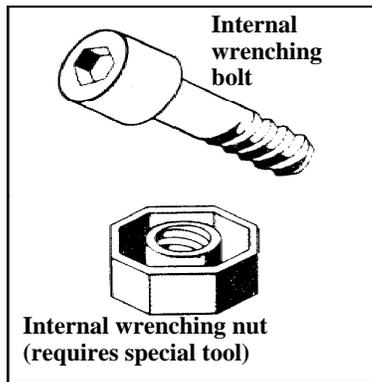
2.11.10.7 Internal wrenching screws and bolts. Internal wrenching screws and bolts allow higher torque, better tool grip, and less wrenching space. However, they are easily damaged, difficult to remove when damaged, and require special tools. Internal wrenching screws should be designed so that:

- a. The number of different sizes is minimized to require only one, or as few as possible, tools.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

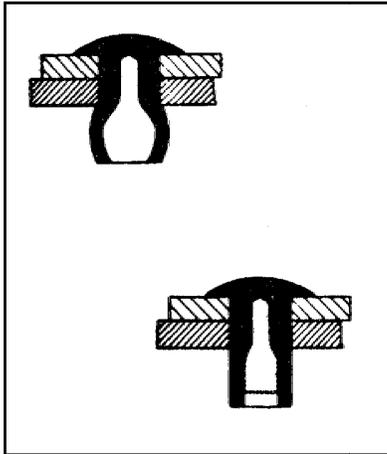
- b. Slots are deep to eliminate damage to the fasteners.
- c. To allow and plan for the removal of damaged internal wrenching fasteners in terms of clearances, power outlets, etc. (See also Figure 2.11.16, Example of internal wrenching bolt and nut).

Figure 2.11.16. Example of internal wrenching bolt and nut.



2.11.10.8 Rivets. Permanent fasteners are hard and slow to remove and replace; they should not be used on any part which may require removal. Wire stapling or metal stitching is generally preferable to rivets for maintenance purposes. Rivets should:

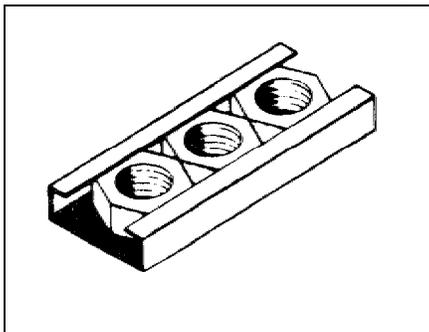
- a. Not be used on latches, hinges, or retainers.
- b. Be of softer material than the pieces they fasten.
- c. For countersunk rivets, have heads larger than the thinnest of the pieces they fasten, to prevent them from ripping through.
- d. For shear rivets which do not expand to fill the hole and consequently require holes drilled to close tolerances, maintenance instructions should specify these hole tolerances and the sizes of plug gauges and reamers to be used.
- e. Expand by chemical charge rather than by peening for minor maintenance of light components. These rivets expand when heat is applied to a chemical charge contained within the rivet. Rivets are especially useful in blind applications (See also Figure 2.11.17, Example of chemical charge rivet).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 2.11.17. Example of chemical charge rivet.****2.11.11 Fastener accessories****2.11.11.1 Washers.** Washers should:

- a. Fit tightly against the underside of the fastener head.
- b. Fit the shaft snugly, but should be easy to remove.
- c. Be split-ring lock washers if used with static loads in excess of 2 oz.
- d. Be lock washers if used with lock nuts, for maximum locking action.

2.11.11.2 Metallic inserts and blocks. Metallic inserts and blocks should:

- a. Be secured so that tightening of the screw or bolt will not loosen or move the insert or block.
- b. Be used with gang-channeling of nuts to save time when there are many nuts in a straight line. Only channels should be used in which nuts can be replaced individually (See also Figure 2.11.18, Example of gang-channeled nuts).

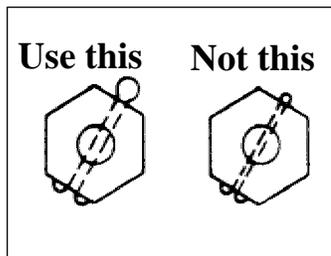
Figure 2.11.18. Example of gang-channeled nuts.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Only be used with nut-plates when several bolts are to be fastened on one surface and alignment is not a problem. (Nut-plates heavy and expensive to replace when a hole is stripped.)

2.11.11.3 Cotter pins and keys. Cotter pins and keys should:

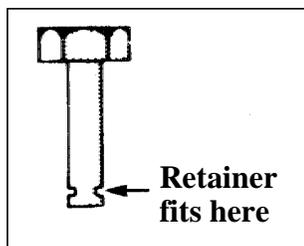
- a. Fit snugly, but should not require driving in or out.
- b. Regarding cotter keys, have large heads to facilitate removal and prevent the keys from slipping through (See also Figure 2.11.19, Example of adequate size cotter key head).

Figure 2.11.19. Example of adequate size cotter key head.**2.11.11.4 Safety wire.** Safety wire should:

- a. Be used only when self-locking fasteners or cotter pins are not adequate to withstand the expected vibration or stress.
- b. Be attached so it can be easily removed and replaced.
- c. Be used where visible means of detection is required to determine if a fastener has become loosened or has changed position.

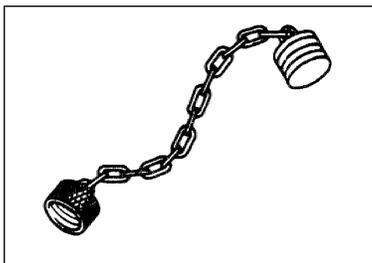
2.11.11.5 Retainer rings. Retainer rings should:

- a. Easily removed and replaced when worn.
- b. Hold with a positive snap action.
- c. Use Spring tension to prevent loosening or unlocking of twist-to-lock rings (See also Figure 2.11.20, Example of retainer ring).

Figure 2.11.20. Example of retainer ring.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**2.11.11.6 Retainer chains.** Retainer chains should:

- a. Be link, sash, or woven-mesh type chains; bead-link chain is not recommended because it breaks more easily than other types.
- b. Be attached with screws or bolts; attachment should be strong and positive, but easily disconnected when required.
- c. Have eyelets at both ends of the chain for the attaching fasteners.
- d. Be attached externally rather than internally when used for filler caps to facilitate replacement and prevent broken parts from damaging equipment.
- e. Not be used wherever they might interfere with moving parts.
- f. Use chain covers that are flexible, durable, and easy to bend where they are required to prevent chains from becoming tangled.
- g. Be used (locking bars may also be used) to:
 - Keep hatches or doors from opening too far and springing their hinges.
 - Turn doors or covers into useful shelves for the technician.
 - Prevent small covers, plates, or caps from being misplaced.
 - Secure small, special tools to the location in which they will be used.
 - Secure objects which might otherwise fall and cause personnel injury (See also Figure 2.11.21, Example of retainer chain)

Figure 2.11.21. Example of retainer chain.**2.12 Drawer and rack design**

Drawers and racks refer to pullout, roll-out, slide-out, or hinged equipment assemblies designed to (See also Figure 2.12.1, Examples of drawer and rack design, for examples of different designs):

- a. Optimize work space, tool clearance, and accessibility.
- b. Reduce the need for the technician to handle fragile or sensitive items.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Facilitate the handling and/or positioning of heavy or awkward items.
- d. Facilitate the maintenance of items which must be frequently moved from their installed positions for checking, servicing, or repair.

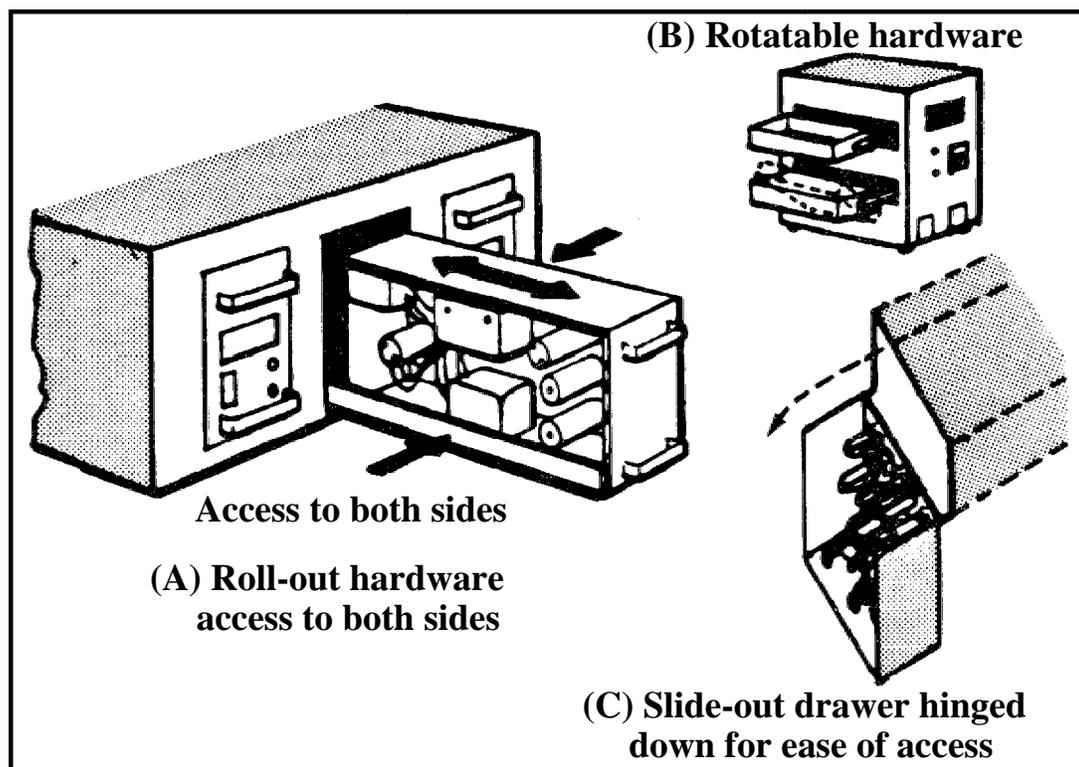
2.12.1 Minimum number of operations. Drawers and racks should require a minimum number of operations to open or release them.

2.12.2 Force to open. A force of less than 176 N (40 lbs.) should be required to open and release drawers and racks.

2.12.3 Bearing assembly. A smooth operating bearing assembly should be used, as needed.

2.12.4 Center of gravity. Rollout rack mounted in consoles should not shift the center of gravity to cause the console to be unstable. If this possibility exists the console or rack should be safely secured.

Figure 2.12.1. Examples of drawer and rack design.



2.12.5 Automatic locking. Where locking is required, drawers and racks should lock automatically in both servicing and operating modes. Unlocking of self-locking provisions should be accomplished by one hand.

2.12.6 Open/closed/locked status obvious. On visual inspection the status of the drawer or rack should be obvious e.g., if it is fastened/locked and if it is in the closed position.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.12.7 Small, hinge mounted units. Small, hinge-mounted units, which must have access from the back, should be free to open their full distance and remain open without being held

2.12.8 Handles. Handles should be provided on drawers and racks, when necessary, to facilitate operation and handling.

2.12.9 Assemble accessibility. Assemblies should be accessible without breaking internal connections which are necessary for required maintenance.

2.12.10 Interlocks. Interlocks should be provided to improve safety and ensure disconnection of equipment that would otherwise be damaged by withdrawal of racks or drawers. Equipment design should obviate the need for interlocks.

2.12.11 Guards and shields. To prevent possible damage to fragile or sensitive parts during movement of the assembly, drawers and racks should be provided with guards and shields as necessary.

2.12.12 Rests, limit stops, guards, and/or retaining devices. Rests, limit stops, guards, and/or retaining devices should be provided as part of the basic chassis.

They should:

- a. Prevent the assembly from being unintentionally pulled out from the rack.
- b. Prevent heavy assemblies from tipping the equipment.
- c. Allow complete and convenient removal of the assembly.
- d. Allow the assembly to open to its full distance and remain open without being held.
- e. Permit convenient overriding of stops for rack or drawer removal without use of a tool.

2.12.13 Leads or cables to drawer or rack. Leads or cables to drawers and racks should have adequate slack and protection so they allow movement of the drawer or rack without their disconnection.

2.12.14 Connection and disconnection of leads or cables. The connections should be designed to be easily disconnected/connected when the drawer is in the fully opened position.

2.12.14.1 Connectors attached so closing assembly establishes connection. If internal connection is not required for maintenance, connectors to the drawer or rack may be attached to the assembly so that closing the assembly establishes connection. This requires:

- a. Connector parts to be mounted on the assembly's rear wall.
- b. Locks to ensure that the connectors remain engaged.
- c. Guides to ensure proper orientation of the assembly prior to pin engagement.
- d. Insulation to the connectors, as needed, for safety.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.13 Handle and grasp area design

Handles are for grasping removable or replaceable units. Grasp area refers to a surface used as a handhold during installation or removal.

2.13.1 Use of handles. Handles should be provided on all packages, units, components, and covers whenever these items are handled frequently, difficult to carry, hold fragile components, or weigh over 4.5 kg (10 lbs.)

2.13.2 The size, location, and positioning of handles. The size, location, and positioning of handles should be based on

- a. Weight and center of gravity of the item or unit.
- b. Number of persons, or hands, required to lift or carry the item.
- c. Type of clothing and gloves worn.
- d. Operational position of the item relative to other items.
- e. Manner in which the item is to be handled or positioned
- f. Distance over which the item must be carried.
- g. Frequency with which the item must be handled or carried.
- h. Additional uses the handles could serve.

2.13.3 Minimum dimensions for different handle designs. The recommended minimum dimensions for different types of commonly used handles are presented in Figure 2.13.1, Minimum dimensions for commonly used handle designs.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.13.1. Minimum dimensions for different handle designs

Type of handle	Dimensions in mm (in.)								
	X	Bare hand		Gloved hand			Mittened hand		
		Y	Z	X	Y	Z	X	Y	Z
(See Figure A) Two-finger bar	32 (1.25)	64 (2.5)	76 (3)	38 (1.5)	76 (3)	76 (3)	Not applicable		
One-hand bar	48 (1.9)	112 (4.4)	76 (3)	51 (2)	127 (5)	102 (4)	76 (3)	133 (5.25)	152 (6)
Two-hand bar	48 (1.9)	216 (8.5)	76 (3)	51 (2)	267 (10.5)	102 (4)	76 (3)	279 (11)	152 (6)
(See Figure B) T-bar	38 (1.5)	102 (4)	76 (3)	51 (2)	114 (4.5)	102 (4)	Not applicable		
(See Figure C) J-bar	51 (2)	102 (4)	76 (3)	51 (2)	114 (4.5)	102 (4)	76 (3)	127 (5)	152 (6)
(See Figure D) Two-finger recess	32 (1.25)	64 (2.5)	51 (2)	38 (1.5)	76 (3)	51 (2)	Not applicable		
One-hand recess	51 (2)	108 (4.25)	89 (3.5)	89 (3.5)	133 (5.25)	102 (4)	89 (3.5)	133 (5.25)	127 (5)
(See Figure E) Finger-tip recess	19 (0.75)	----	13 (0.5)	25 (1)	----	19 (0.75)	Not applicable		
One-finger recess	32 (1.25)	----	51 (2)	38 (1.5)	----	51 (2)	Not applicable		
Curvature of Handle or Edge (Does not preclude use of oval handles)									
Weight of item	Minimum diameter								
Gripping efficiency is best if finger can curl around handle or edge to any angle									
Up to 6.8 kg (15 lb) 120° or more.	D = 6 mm (0.25 in.)			6.8 - 9.1 kg (15 - 20 lb)			D = 13 mm (0.5 in.)		
9.1 - 18.1 kg (15 - 40 lb)	D = 19 mm (0.75 in.)								
Over 18.1 kg (40 lb)	D = 25 mm (1 in.)								
T-bar post	T = 13 mm (0.5 in.)								

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.13.3.1 Dimension for handles requiring a firm grip. Handles that must be gripped firmly should be at least 114 mm (4.5 in.) wide and 51 mm (2.0 in.) deep.

2.13.4 Location lifting handles and grasp areas. Whenever possible, handles, grasp areas or hoist points should be located to preclude uncontrolled swinging or tilting when lifted e.g. over the center of gravity. They shall be located to provide at least 50 mm (2 in.) of clearance from obstructions during handling and should allow the carried item to clear the carrier's legs. Handle location should not interfere with installing, removing, operating or maintaining the equipment. When two or more handles are required, they should be placed at equal distances from the center of gravity. (See also Figure 2.13.2, Handle location for easy carrying).

2.13.5 Handles for covers. Covers should be provided with handles to facilitate removing them and also for carrying the unit (See also Figure 2.13.3, Handle location for covers and carrying units).

Figure 2.13.2. Handle location for easy carrying.

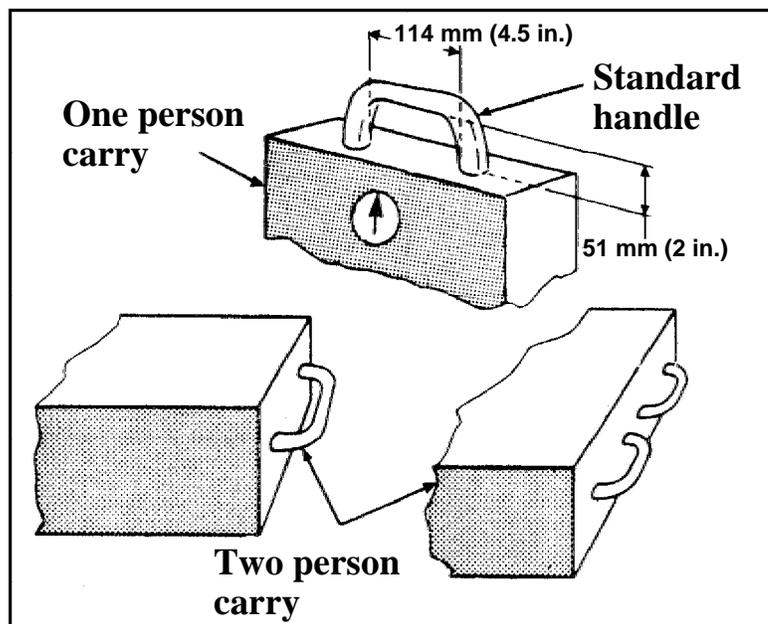
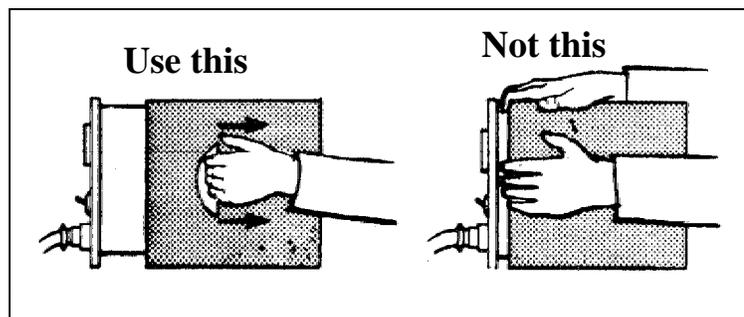


Figure 2.13.3. Handle location for covers and carrying units.



DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.13.6 Lifting criteria for handles. Handles should meet the lifting criteria listed in Table 2.13.1, Lifting Criteria for handles.

Table 2.13.1. Lifting criteria for handles.

Weight to be lifted	Handle diameter	Finger clearance	Handle width
Under 11.3 kg (25 lb)	6 mm - 13 mm (0.25 - 0.5 in.)	51 mm (2 in.)	114 mm (4.5 in.)
Over 11.3 kg (25 lb)	13 mm - 19 mm (0.5 - 0.75 in.)	51 mm (2 in.)	114 mm (4.5 in.)
Lifted by gloved hand		64 mm (2.5 in.)	127 mm (5 in.)

2.13.6.1 Handles for heavier units. Units weighing more than about 11.3 - 18.1 kg (25 - 40 lb) (depending on the size and bulkiness of unit) should be provided with handles for two-person carrying. For units weighing more than 34 kg (75 lb) suitably labeled hoist eyes should be provided. A minimum of 102 mm (4 in.) clearance should be provided about the eye.

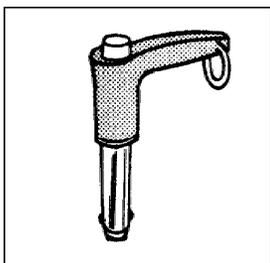
2.13.7 Molded handles. Handles should be comfortable and easy to grasp. When units must be frequently carried for long periods of time, a molded handle should be used to prevent size pressure on the fingers.

2.13.8 Recessed, concealed and folding, attachable (e.g., nonfixed) handles. Recessed grips should be provided near the back of heavy units to facilitate handling. Recessed, concealed, folding, or attachable handles may be used in place of fixed handles to conserve space, but they should be accessible without tools, should be capable of being placed into carrying position by one hand, and folding handles should remain securely folded when not in use. Hinged or fold out handles should have a stop position for holding the handle perpendicular to the surface on which it is mounted.

2.13.8.1 Tactile or visual indicators. Attachable/removable handles should incorporate tactile or visual indication of locked/unlocked status.

2.13.8.2 Quick release pins. Attachable handles should be equipped with quick-release pins to make them easier to insert and remove (See also Figure 2.13.4, Handle equipped with quick-release pins).

Figure 2.13.4. Handle equipped with quick-release pins.



2.13.9 Handles for printed circuit boards. Examples of handles used for the withdrawal and handling of printed circuit boards and their recommended use are shown in Figure 2.13.5, Examples of handles for withdrawing printed circuit boards.

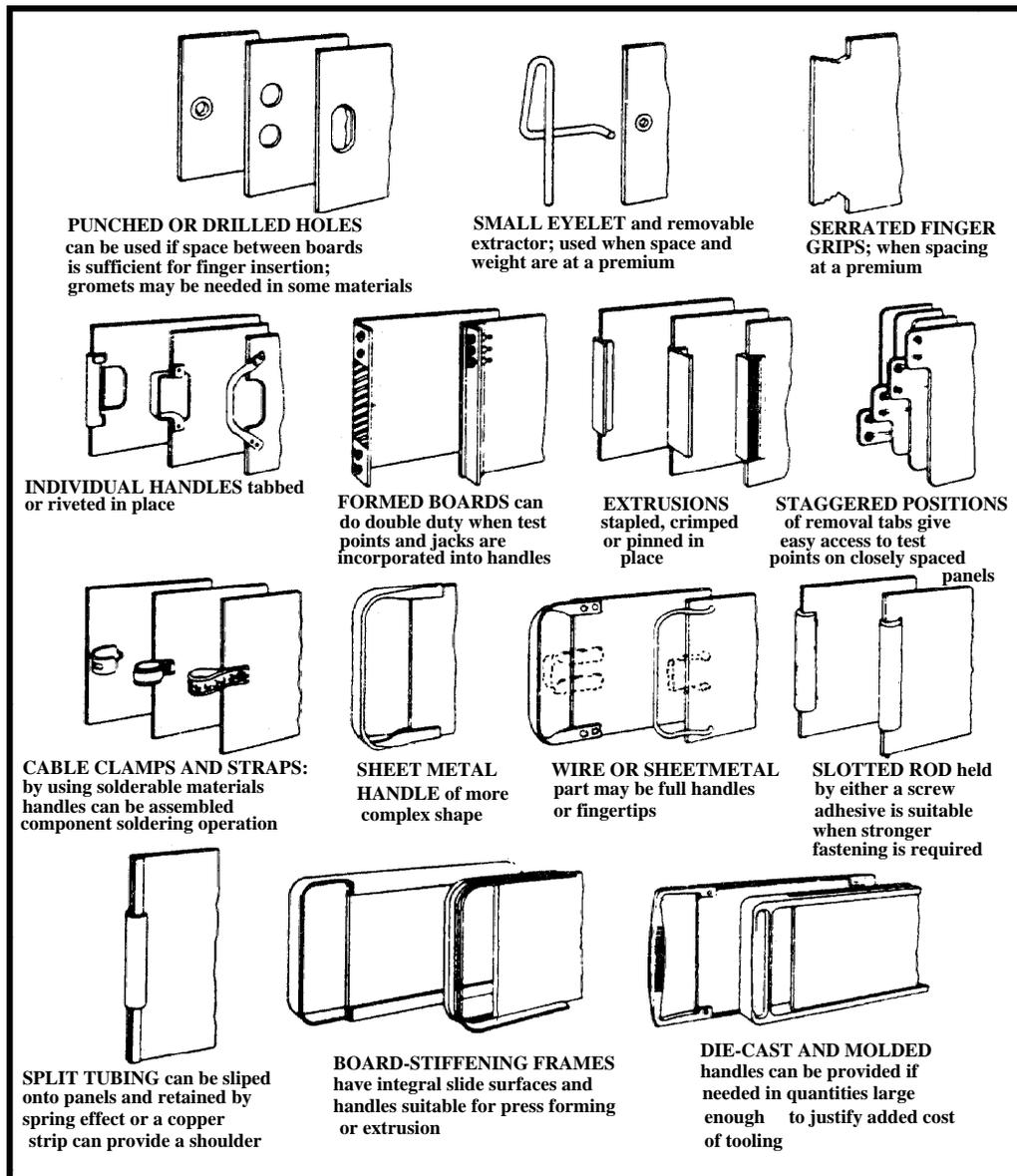
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

2.13.10 Supplemental functions of handles. Handles may be used to fulfill a variety of supplemental functions which are illustrated below in Figure 2.13.6, Examples of miscellaneous uses for handles.

2.13.11 Grasp surface. Where an item's installation requires that its bottom surface be used as a handhold during removal or installation, a nonslip grasp surface (e.g. grooved, knurled, or frictional) shall be provided.

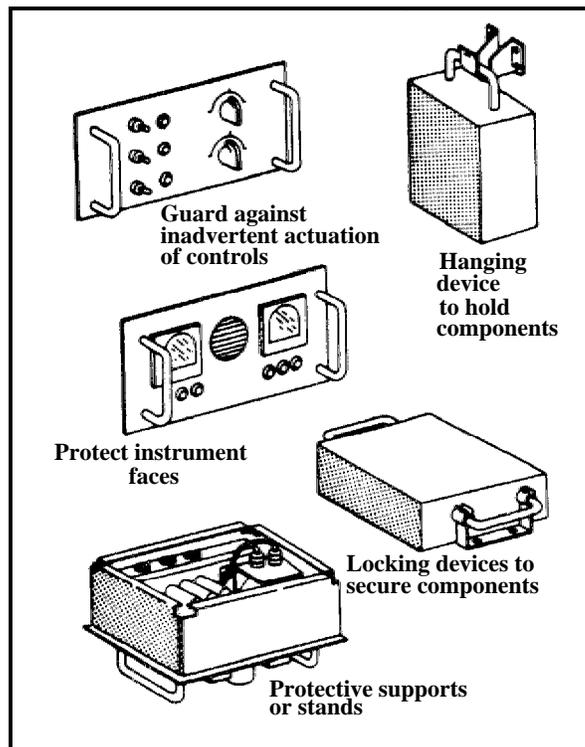
2.13.12 Handle and grasp surface material. Handles or grasp areas used with bare hands should have surfaces that are not thermally or electrically conductive. The surface should be sufficiently hard to prevent imbedding of grit and grime during normal use.

Figure 2.13.5. Examples of handles for withdrawing printed circuit boards.



DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 2.13.6. Examples of miscellaneous uses for handles.



2.14 Maintenance Safety. Human factors engineering/ergonomics in the performance of maintenance is a major factor in the design for maintainability and safety of the operation.

2.14.1 General: Design should reflect the safety-related human factors engineering/ergonomics criteria below, as well as other sections of this handbook. The order of precedence for satisfying system safety requirements is as follows:

- a. Design for minimum risk
- b. Incorporate Safety devices
- c. Provide warning devices
- d. Provide procedures and training
- e. Personnel Protective Equipment

OSHA requirements (19CFR 1910.147) should be invoked to reduce all reasonable hazards to personnel.

2.14.2 Warning labels or placards. Conspicuous labels or placards should be placed on, or adjacent to, any equipment that presents a hazard to personnel (e.g., high voltage, heat, toxic vapors, explosion, or radiation). These labels or placards should describe the hazard and state precautions. Labels and placards should also describe the consequences of not complying with the stated warning. They should:

- a. Be readable from a safe distance

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- b. Be located so as to be apparent to operators, maintainers, and transient personnel
- c. Create no additional distractions, and
- d. Not be hazardous themselves.

2.14.3 General equipment-related hazards

2.14.3.1 Interlocks and alarms. The operation of switches or controls which initiate hazardous operations should require the prior operation of a related or locking control. Where practicable, the critical position of such a control should activate a visual and auditory warning device in the affected work area.

2.14.3.1.1 Lockout/tag-out Devices. Lockout tag-out devices must be designed into the equipment to prevent maintenance activities from taking place prior to dangerous electrical or other dangerous conditions being eliminated. The lockout/tag-out devices must be under the control of the maintenance personnel (i.e., Lock on the electrical supply not removed until the maintenance activity is completed) in accordance with 19 CFR 1910.147.

2.14.3.2 Discharging devices such as shoring bars must be used to discharge high-voltage circuits and capacitors unless they discharge to less than 30 volts within 2 seconds after power removal. (EPRI-NP-4350, Chapter IV-C, Section 4.4)

2.14.3.3 Access. Equipment should be located and mounted so that access can be achieved without danger to personnel from electrical, thermal, mechanical, chemical, radiological or other hazards. Adequate access area and walking/working surfaces must be designed into the workplace for personnel to safely accomplish maintenance activities.

2.13.3.3.1 Covers, Guards and Shields. Covers, Guards and shields must be designed into the equipment so that maintenance personnel are not injured by high-temperature, high-voltage, high-current, sharp and rotating parts or other hazards. (See also section 2.10)

2.14.4 Hazardous Materials and conditions. Hazardous materials and conditions must be contained and controlled so maintenance personnel are not exposed to explosive, toxic, dangerous chemical, radioactive, high-pressure, lack of ventilation, extremes of heat or cold, noise, or other hazardous materials and conditions.

2.14.5 Personnel Protective Equipment. In accordance with 29CFR 190.147, Personnel protective equipment must be available and used where necessary to prevent injury to maintenance personnel (i.e., face shield and leather apron for welding and cutting operations, respirators, eye and ear protection, hard-toed shoes, hard hats, gloves, etc.).

2.14.6 Special Tools and Test Equipment. Equipment should be designed so that standard tools may be used, when practical. When Special Tools and Test Equipment are necessary to safely accomplish a maintenance task (i.e. insulated, calibrated, non-conductive, non-magnetic tools and equipment) they should be provided as part of the equipment design and reflected in the procedures.

2.14.7 Configuration Management and Identification. An adequate and effective configuration management and identification program should be in place to prevent maintenance personnel from misidentification and inappropriate identification errors such as de-energizing one circuit and subsequently proceeding to work on a different circuit that is still energized.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.0 WORKSPACE, STORAGE, AND WORKSHOP DESIGN**3.1 Workspace and operations in non-workshop areas****3.1.1 Workspace**

3.1.1.1 General Maintenance clearance. To provide adequate clearance for maintainers and to provide sufficient space to accommodate tools, test equipment, procedures, and other job aids during an in-place repair, a nominal 914 mm (36 in.) maintenance clearance should be provided around all major system components and piping of 610 mm (24 in.) diameter and larger.

3.1.1.1 Console floor space. Whenever feasible, free floor space of at least 1.22 m (48 in.) should be provided in front of consoles used by maintenance personnel. For equipment racks that require maintenance, free floor space should be provided in accordance with the criteria given below.

3.1.1.2. Depth of work area. Clearance from the front of the rack to the nearest facing surface or obstacle should not be less than 1.07 m (42 in.). Where wheelchair accessibility is desired, 1.22 m (48 in.) should be used as a minimum. The minimum space between rows of cabinets should be 200 mm (8 in.) greater than the depth of the deepest drawer (equipment) (See also Figure 3.1.1, Depth of work area).

3.1.1.3 Lateral workspace. The minimum lateral work space for racks having drawers or removable equipment should be as follows (measured from the drawers or equipment in the extended position):

- a. For racks having drawers or removable items weighing less than 20 kg (44 lb): 460 mm (18 in.) on one side and 100 mm (4 in.) on the other.
- b. For racks having drawers or removable items weighing over 20 kg (44 lb): 460 mm (18 in.) on each side.

3.1.1.4 Space between rows of cabinets. The minimum space between rows of cabinets should be 200 mm (8 in.) greater than the depth of the deepest drawer or cabinet.

3.1.1.5 Change in position. Workspace should allow the technician to change posture if the maintenance task being performed requires prolonged kneeling, crawling, or crouching.

3.1.1.6 Wheelchair access. When wheelchair accessibility is required, a clear floor space at least 762 mm (30 in.) by 1219 mm (48 in.) should be provided to allow either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair. The required reach envelope should be from 381-1219 mm (15-48 in.) above the floor. Hardware for accessible storage spaces should be operable with one hand and should not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to use this hardware should not exceed 22 N (5 lb). Touch latches and U-shaped pulls are acceptable.

3.1.1.7 Space adjacent to live electrical parts. When the work space is adjacent to live electrical parts with up to 150 volts that may require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance, a minimum clearance of 3 feet shall be provided. This distance shall be measured from the live parts if they are exposed or from the enclosure front or opening if the live parts are enclosed. For higher voltages, the clearance shall conform to OSHA standard 29 CFR 1910, as applicable. When voltages are greater than 150 volts, that voltage should be specified.

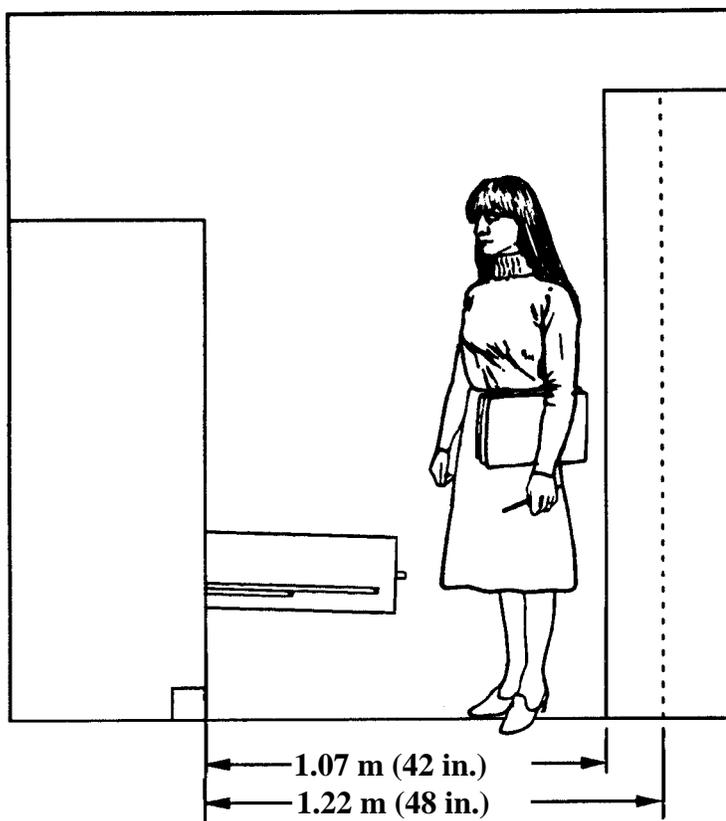
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.1.1.8 Surface materials to provide traction. Non-skid treads, expanded metal flooring, or abrasive coatings should be provided on all surfaces which may be used for walking, climbing, or footholds.

3.1.1.9 Handles. Handles on cabinets and consoles should be recessed whenever practicable to eliminate projections on the surface. If handles cannot be recessed, they shall be designed so that they shall neither injure personnel nor entangle clothing or equipment. (5.7.1.2) The design placement of handles should be based on ergonomic optimization for the human hand and strength envelopes, and the task to be undertaken.

3.1.1.10 Storage space. Adequate and suitable space shall be provided on consoles or immediate work space for the storage of manuals, worksheets, tools, and other materials that are frequently used by the maintenance or operator personnel or other materials that are emergency related.

Figure 3.1.1 Depth of work area.



3.1.1.11 Materials to be provided. To assist the technician in performing the required maintenance, the following should be provided at the workplace whenever practical.

- a. Auxiliary hooks, holders, lights, outlets, etc.
- b. Auxiliary stands/shelves built into equipment to support test equipment, removable units, or items to be repaired.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Lattice work, low cabinets, mirrors, open space, etc. as necessary to allow observation of related displays, moving parts, fasteners, test points, etc.
- d. Communication aids.

3.1.2 Standing Operations

3.1.2.1 Requirements for standing work space and clearance. Whenever possible, workspace design should allow routine, frequent, and/or short-term maintenance to be performed from a standing position.

3.1.2.2 Visual and manipulation workspace requirements**3.1.2.2.1 Display placement, normal**

Visual displays mounted on vertical panels and visual displays used in normal equipment operation shall be placed between 1.04 m (41 in.) and 1.78 m (70 in.) above the standing surface. On all panel configurations, the angle from the center of the display face plane to the line of sight should be 45° or greater from the typical working position. The displays should be within the upper limit of the visual field of the 5th percentile female, e.g. 75° above the horizontal line of sight. [Assume an eye height of 1.435 m (56.5 in.).]

3.1.2.2.2 Display Placement, Special

Displays requiring precise and frequent reading shall be placed so that the center of the display shall be between 1.27 m (50 in.) and 1.65 m (65 in.) above the standing surface.

3.1.2.2.3 Control Placement, Normal

All controls mounted on a vertical surface and controls used in normal equipment operation shall be located between 860 mm and 1.780 m (34 and 70 in.) above the standing surface. Or where there is appreciable depth, all controls shall be located within the reach radius of the 5th percentile female [approximately 640 mm (25.2 in.)]. Controls shall be between 76 and 635 mm (3 and 25 in.) from the front edge of the console [the 76 mm (3 in.) limit protects against accidental activation].

3.1.2.2.4 Control Placement, Special

Control Controls requiring precise or frequent operation and controls for emergency shall be mounted between 860 mm and 1.35 m (34 and 53 in.) above the standing surface and no farther than 530 mm (21 in.) laterally from the center line marking the operator's normal or most frequent standing position.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.1.2.3 Work clearances. Work clearances for standing operations are provided below.

	<u>Minimum</u>	<u>Preferred</u>
a. Horizontal Clearance (passing) 813 mm (32 in.)	508 mm (20 in.)	813 mm (32 in)
b. Overhead clearance:	1960 mm (77 in)	2010 mm (79 in)
c. Maximum overhead reach		1803 mm (71 in)
d. Maximum depth of reach		584 mm (23 in)
e. Standing Space when working opposite console/rack	1067mm (42 in)	1022 mm (48 in)
f. Kick space	104 mm (4 in)	

3.1.3 Seated operations

3.1.3.1 Seating Compatibility. Work seating should provide an adequate supporting framework for the body relative to the activities that must be carried out. Chairs to be used with sit-down consoles should be designed to be operationally compatible with the console configuration.

3.1.3.2 Work surface dimensions. Work surface dimensions for seated operations are provided below.

- | | | |
|-----|--------|-------------------------------|
| (1) | Width | 760 mm (30 in.), minimum |
| (2) | Depth | 400 mm (16 in.), minimum |
| (3) | Height | 690-790 mm (27-31 in.), range |

3.1.3.3 Adjustable surfaces for seated operations. When the surface has multiple users with wide variations in height, adjustable furniture should be considered. The minimum height value for adjustable desk, writing table, adjustable keyboard support surfaces, etc. should be 585 mm (23 in.) or lower; the upper range should be at least 710 mm (28 in.).

3.1.3.4 Writing surfaces for seated operations. Where a writing surface is required on equipment consoles, it should be a least 400 mm (16 in.) deep and 610 mm (24 in. wide, or consistent with maintenance personnel reach requirements.

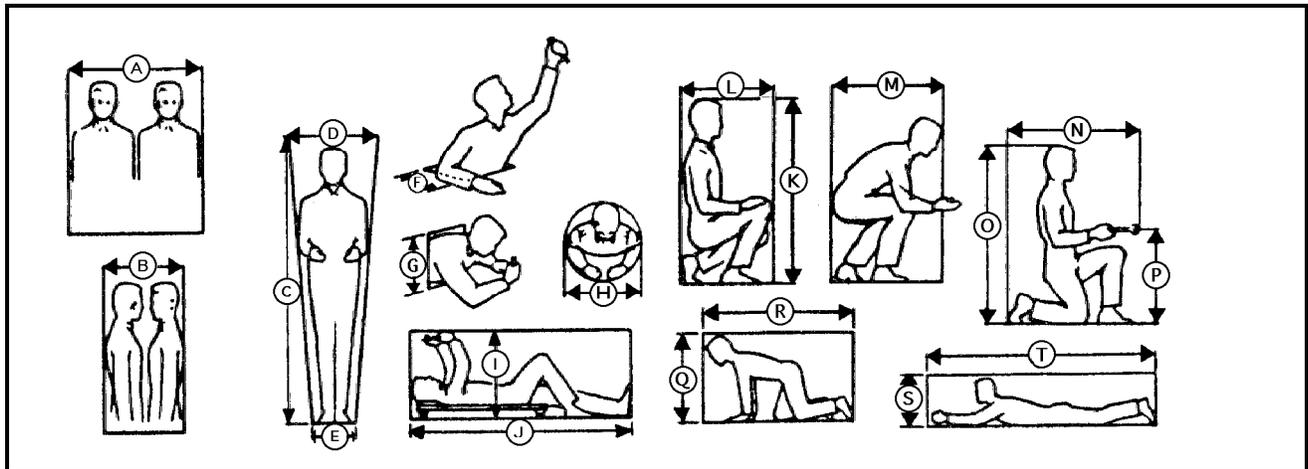
3.1.3.5 Display placement for seated operations. All displays should be mounted so that they are within the upper limit of the visual field: 75° above the horizontal line of sight of the 5th percentile female [assume an eye point height of 1.06 m (42 in.)] so that the angle from the line of sight to the display face plane is 45° or greater (there is no lower limit for a plausible sit down console design). Generally, the lateral display placement should not exceed the optimal lateral viewing zone which extends 15° beyond the center point.

3.1.3.7 Control placement for seated operations. Controls should be placed 76.635 mm (3-25 in.) from the front edge of the console. Control height should be such that control actuation does not require more than a 638 mm (25 in.) reach by the console operator sitting in the normal working position (e.g. for the 5th percentile female operator).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.1.4 Requirements for mobile work space. When technicians are required to work or pass through limited spaces, appropriate clearances should be selected from those provided in Figure 3.1.2, Mobile workspace dimensions.

Figure 3.1.2. Mobile workspace dimensions.



Type of Dimension	Min.	Best	Suited	Type of Dimension	Min.	Best	Suited
A. <u>Two men passing abreast</u>	1.07 m (42 in.)	1.37 m (54 in.)	1.52 m (60 in.)	<u>Squatting work space</u> K. Height	1.22 m (48 in.)	-----	1.30 m (51 in.)
B. <u>Two men passing facing</u>	0.76 m (30 in.)	0.91 m (36 in.)	0.91 m (36 in.)	L. Width Optimum display area	0.69 m (27 in.)	0.91 m (36 in.)	1.02 m (40 in.)
<u>Catwalk dimensions</u>				Optimum control area		0.69-1.09 m (27-43 in.)	
C. Height	1.60 m (63 in.)	1.96 m (77 in.)	2.01 m (79 in.)	<u>Stooping work space</u> M. Width	0.91 m (36 in.)	1.02 m (40 in.)	1.12 m (44 in.)
D. Shoulder width	0.56 m (22 in.)	0.61 m (24 in.)	0.81 m (32 in.)	Optimum display area		0.81-1.22 m (32-48 in.)	
E. Walking width*	0.30 m (12 in.)	0.38 m (15 in.)	0.38 m (15 in.)	Optimum control area		0.61-0.99 m (24-39 in.)	
F. <u>Vertical entry hatch</u> (round or square)	0.46 m (18 in.)	0.56 m (22 in.)	0.81 m (32 in.)	<u>Kneeling work space</u> N. Width	1.07 m (42 in.)	1.22 m (48 in.)	1.27 m (50 in.)
				O. Height	1.42 m (56 in.)	-----	1.50 m (59 in.)
				P. Optimum work point		0.69 m (27 in.)	

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Type of Dimension	Min.	Best	Suited	Type of Dimension	Min.	Best	Suited
G. <u>Horizontal entry hatch</u>				Optimum display area		0.71-1.12 m (28-44 in.)	
Shoulder width	0.46 m (18 in.)	0.56 m (22 in.)	0.81 m (32 in.)	Optimum control area		0.51-0.89 (20-35 in.)	
Height	0.38 m (15 in.)	0.51 m (20 in.)	0.61 m (24 in.)				
H. <u>Crawl through pipe</u> (round or square)				<u>Kneeling crawl space</u>	0.79 m (31 in.)	0.91 m (36 in.)	0.97 m (38 in.)
	0.64 m (25 in.)	0.76 m (30 in.)	0.81 m (32 in.)	Q. Height			
				R. Length	1.50 m (59 in.)	-----	1.57 m (62 in.)
<u>Supine work space</u>				<u>Prone work or crawl space</u>	0.43 m (17 in.)	0.51 m (20 in.)	0.61 m (24 in.)
I. Height	0.51 m (20 in.)	0.61 m (24 in.)	0.66 m (26 in.)	S. Height			
J. Length	1.85 m (73 in.)	1.92 m (75 in.)	1.98 m (78 in.)	T. Length	2.44 m (96 in.)	-----	-----

*OSHA standard 1910.23(C)(2) requires using a 0.45 m (18 in.) minimum for catwalk runways special consideration (larger access) must be given when personnel may be wearing bulky or protective clothing referred to as "Suited".

3.1.4.1 Movement of equipment and materials through aisle ways. Passageway dimensions should reflect sizes of equipment and materials that personnel will move through the aisles.

3.1.4.1.1 Requirements for major equipment. As part of plant design, the removal path for all major pieces of equipment should be defined and documented in prints and drawings. These paths include aisles, hatches, doors, knockout walls, removable components, elevators, ramps, as well as handling devices such as permanent and temporary cranes, chain falls, skids, and vehicles. Handling and mounting requirements should be described and dimensions and weights of equipment should be combined with the handling devices to evaluate the removal envelope and the handling capacity of elevators.

3.1.4.2 Vehicular movement through aisle ways. Aisle ways used by vehicles should be sized to accommodate the dimensions of the vehicle, its load, and any personnel who may have to accompany the load. Aisle way size should allow for vehicle turning radius and variations in load width, length, and placement.

3.1.4.3 Doors. The same considerations used to determine aisle way size should be applied to determining door size. Security constraints for leaving certain doors open should also be considered.

3.1.4.3.1 Doorway curbs. Where doorway curbs may impede vehicular or equipment movement ramps should be available and may be built in if they will not interfere with traffic passing by the doorway. Door height should be checked to ensure that the curb does not cause overhead clearance problems.

3.1.4.4 Roof access. Where applicable such as when HVAC systems, elevator machinery rooms, or instrumentation are located on the roof, roof access should be provided for maintenance personnel that allows efficient movement of necessary personnel and equipment to the applicable area. Use of elevators is recommended although stairs may be acceptable. Use of ladders alone is generally inadequate.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.1.5 Access and egress safety

Standards relating to access and egress safety are listed below. For additional standards related to ladder, catwalk, platforms, and railings see Section 3.10, Stair ladder and ramp design for maintainers of this document.

3.1.5.1 Fixed, safe access provisions. Fixed, safe access provisions, such as fixed ladders, catwalks, and platforms should be provided for equipment that requires recurrent maintenance.

3.1.5.2 Temporary, safe access provisions. Where equipment maintenance is infrequent, clearances should be provided for erecting temporary access provisions such as portable ladders and scaffolding rather than relying on ad-hoc access provisions.

3.1.5.3 Protective railings. Protective railings should be provided on open-sided floors, platforms, or other elevated walking or work surfaces that can create a drop of four feet or more. Exceptions are entrances to ramps, stairways, and fixed ladders.

3.1.5.4 Open holes in pathways. Open holes in pathways that can cause tripping or ankle-turning should be covered. Where temporary openings occur due to floor plug removal, temporary railings should be available to guard against falling.

3.1.5.5 Fall protection devices. Fall protection devices should be used when personnel must work at elevations where falls can cause injury or fatality. Examples of such devices are personnel nets, body belts and lanyards, retracting lifeline devices, climbing safety devices, and controlled descent devices.

3.1.5.6 Placement of outlets. Outlets for all of the services should be available immediately adjacent to each row or island of equipment and placed so that hoses, cables, or lines are not run across an aisle. Outlets for any one service should not be placed more than 15.2 m (50 ft) apart and should have multiple outlets at each location.

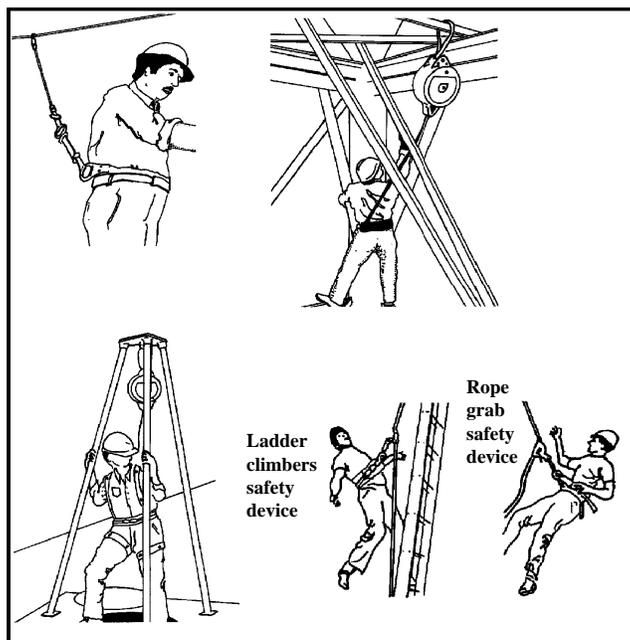
3.1.5.7 Drainage provisions. Drainage provisions should be provided to maintain walking and climbing surfaces free of slippery substances e.g., oil, water, and ice.

3.1.5.7.1 Location of floor drains. Floor drains should be located so that draining, flushing, and washdown activity does not require running drain hoses across the aisles or permit water or other liquids to flow into traffic areas.

3.1.5.7.2 Floor surface shape. Floor surfaces should be shaped so that equipment spills are directed toward the nearest drain and away from pathways.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 3.1.3. Fall protection devices.



3.1.5.7.3 Barriers. Barriers or other containment features should be provided to prevent spills from reaching pathways or passing from one plant level to another.

3.1.5.7.4 Emergency drainage systems. Emergency drainage systems should be provided to direct flammable or other hazardous liquid leakage to a safe location.

3.1.5.8 Walking surfaces. Nonskid walking and climbing surfaces should be provided to minimize slipping or falling accidents.

3.1.5.9 Unobstructed pathways. Maintain aisles and pathways free of obstacles and obstructions that can serve as head knockers or cause physical contact injuries.

3.1.5.9.1 Use of cages and flags. Cages, flags, or highlighting should be used to protect against potentially injurious projections or obstacles in pathways including moving equipment parts.

3.1.5.10 Avoid injurious contact with hazardous environmental factors. Safeguards should be provided to prevent injurious contact with hot surfaces, radiological materials, exhaust fumes, dangerous chemicals, and venting steam.

3.1.5.11 Avoid injurious contact with vehicles. Safeguards should be provided to prevent injuries to personnel when vehicles and personnel share the same pathways and intersections through the plant. The safeguards include use of:

- a. Clearly marking pathways and crossways to alert personnel to vehicular traffic.
- b. Corner mirrors.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Rotating beacons while vehicles are in motion.
- d. Auditory alarms when vehicles are backing up.

3.1.5.12 Exits. Well-marked exits should be provided to permit prompt and safe evacuation of plant personnel in the event of an emergency. Exits should be marked by readily visible, suitably illuminated exit signs with plainly legible letters no less than 152 mm (6 in.) high. Supplementary means such as audible signals and battery powered lighting should be provided, as needed, to locate exits under emergency conditions.

3.1.5.12.1 Two means of egress. At least two means of egress remote from each other should be provided in potentially hazardous areas where maintenance personnel may be endangered by the blocking of a single means of egress due to fire, smoke, or escaping hazardous liquids.

3.1.6 Conveniences for maintainers. Maintainers should be provided with adequate eating, break-time, and locker facilities, as well as sleeping facilities where applicable.

3.2 Facility design for work in radiological areas

See also Section 3.4, radiological areas, in this document

3.2.1 Equipment and facilities in radiological areas. Equipment located in radiological areas should be designed to accommodate maintenance technicians wearing protective clothing including allowing for decreased manual dexterity because of protective clothing. The designs for facilities and equipment which are located in radiological areas should optimize speed of maintenance operations to minimize stay times and associated exposure levels. The following factors should be used in conjunction with optimization methods as mandated by 10CFR835.1002, "Occupational Radiation Protection" (Radiation Safety).

3.2.1.1 Modularization and oversized components. Since doing intricate electrical work with gloves is difficult more emphasis should be placed on modularization and the use of oversized nuts, bolts, and other components.

3.2.1.2 Broader ladder rungs. Since feet are less sensitive in boots and tripping is more likely, ladders should have broader rungs.

3.2.1.3 Lift and movement aids. To minimize personnel exposure, lift and movement aids should be provided. Examples of such aids are monorails, fixed-beam hoist points, hand trucks, dollies, carts, and portable lifts. Interruptions to smooth rolling should be avoided at the entrance.

3.2.1.4 Tools and remote handling equipment. Long-handled tools, remotely operated controls, remote handling equipment, and similar approaches should be used where feasible to separate maintenance technicians from radiological sources to the maximum extent possible.

3.2.2 Traffic routes. Traffic routes near radiation sources or through potentially radiologically contaminated portions of the facility should route personnel away from radiation exposure sources as much as possible.

3.2.3 Entry/egress points. Egress points from a contamination zone should allow placement of a trash barrel for disposable waste; a trash barrel for washable waste; and a table for survey meters, tapes, gloves, bags, and paperwork. Allowance should also be made for space on both sides of the access point for

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

adding, changing, or removing protective clothing, surveying personnel and equipment, and bagging contaminated equipment. Doorways and aisles should be widened at points of anticipated high traffic to prevent bottlenecks.

3.2.4 Access openings. Access openings associated with equipment in radiological areas should be sited to allow convenient and speedy entry and exit by technicians who span the anthropometric range while being burdened by protective clothing.

3.2.5 Use of permanent or fixed access. Permanent or fixed access provisions should be available to equipment which is located in radiological work areas to reduce radiation exposure incurred by erecting temporary accesses, e.g., scaffolding, shielding.

3.2.6 Barrier protection. Barrier protection varying from simple distance from hot equipment to block walls and lead blankets or sheathing should be used to minimize exposure.

3.2.7 Radiological spaces. Radiological spaces should be formally designated within nuclear facilities at different levels of buildings. (See also Section 3.4, Radiological Workshops)

3.2.8 Dual train systems. Dual train systems should be separated so that work on an idle train is not performed in the radiation field coming from the running train. System placement should take into account permanent and temporary shielding and its effect on repair and replacement activities.

3.2.9 Piping systems in radiological areas. Piping systems in radiological areas should be routed to accommodate men physically encumbered by protective garments, air bottles, and face masks or plastic hoods. Reach rods should only be used where direct access to the valves will result in a personnel exposure or other adverse environmental condition significantly exceeding that obtained by manual operation.

3.2.10 Drainage. Drainage should be away from aisles, walkways, and open areas to prevent spreading contamination. Drains should be placed close to equipment that may leak or require cleaning and equipment drains should run all the way to a floor drain to avoid adding contamination to, or spreading existing contamination on, the floor.

3.2.11 Control and storage of contaminated debris. Control and storage of contaminated debris, work aids, spare parts, etc. should be adequate to prevent hindrance to the mobility of personnel and vehicles.

3.2.11.1 Storage for contaminated equipment and stores used during outages. Storage provisions for contaminated equipment and stores used during outages should be adequate to prevent these items from obstructing normal passageways for personnel and vehicles.

3.2.12 Decontamination station. A tool decontamination should be established for the maintainer's use. It should be equipped with solvents, bags, and other aids to facilitate decontamination.

3.2.13 Space for auxiliary contamination control equipment. Normally contaminated work areas or facilities should be sited and configured to allow ample room for radiological waste barrels, step-off pads, contaminated clothing collection barrels, cordon stands, etc.

3.2.14 Use of remote viewing techniques. Remote viewing techniques such as closed circuit TV should be considered for coordinating maintenance activities with a minimum of exposure to radiation on the part of those who support maintenance, i.e., operators, QC inspectors, etc.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.2.15 Direct viewing. Use of viewing provisions (that reduce radiation exposure) in normally opaque shielding walls should be considered to protect personnel who oversee maintenance work.

3.2.16. Protective clothing. Facilities should be available to ensure an adequate supply of clean, decontaminated protective clothing, especially during peak workload periods (e.g., laundering facilities for washable gear, storage facilities for issue of one-time use disposable gear). In the event of contamination, protective clothing, air packs, etc. should be reachable without exposing operators and maintenance personnel to toxic or contaminated air.

3.2.16.1 Design of protective clothing. Protective clothing and associated gear should be designed to withstand multi-stress environments, e.g., heat and radiation, fire and other hazards.

3.2.17 Procedures. Procedures or other maintenance information sources should be readily available to the technician working in contaminated areas. Where procedures and forms must make the transition from "contaminated" to "clean," copies should be used so that contaminated paper stays behind.

3.2.18 Training. Both in-house and contractor personnel assigned to work in radiological areas should receive sufficient training, including mockup rehearsals, to ensure maximum task performance and minimum stay times.

3.3 Workshops

3.3.1 General principles for workshops

Workshop requirements. The requirements for clean workshops vary somewhat according to function depending on whether the maintenance activities being supported are mechanical, electrical, Instrument and control, auxiliary, or some combination of the above. The guidelines reported below are generic in nature and are modified for a specific type of shop by subguidelines where applicable. Guidelines for a remaining category of workshop, radiological workshops, are provided in Section 3.4, Hot workshops, of this document.

3.3.1.1 Workshop location. Maintenance workshops should be located and integrated into the overall facility layout in a manner that minimizes the time required for maintenance personnel to go back and forth between the shops and work areas within the facility.

3.3.1.2 Workshops in multiunit facilities. In multiunit facilities, where units contain different major systems, separate maintenance organizations and workshops should be available for each unit.

3.3.1.3 Support facilities for outside contractor personnel. The facility should offer convenient spaces and support facilities for temporary or permanent outside contractor personnel.

3.3.1.4 Storage. Lockers or cabinets should be available for personal storage so that workbenches and seats stay free of clutter.

3.3.1.5 Availability of movement and lifting aids. Appropriate cranes, monorails, forklifts, carts, and other movement aids should be available within the workshop to allow for moving of heavy equipment and hardware.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.3.2 Layout and relationship to other activities

3.3.2.1 Entry and exit routes. Entry and exit routes through the maintenance workshops should be maintained free of curbs, protrusions or other impediments for the passage of personnel, carts, vehicles, and moving and lifting devices.

3.3.2.2 Large equipment access. A minimum size of 2.44x2.44 m (8 ft x 8 ft) for equipment access doors is recommended for machine and electrical shops, which may require entry of vehicles such as fork lift trucks. For I&C shops a 1.83 m (6 ft) wide entry may be adequate.

3.3.2.2.1 Motor driven door. A motor-driven, roll-up door is recommended for ease of use and minimal interference with traffic. Because of considerations such as front-load extension of forklifts actuation should be hand operated rather than by a floor plate. Manual operation of roll-up doors should not require a lift force exceeding 110 N (25 lb-f).

3.3.2.2.2 Double swing door. A double swing door may also be used effectively with one side usable for personnel and small equipment.

3.3.2.3 Dedicated personnel entries. Dedicated personnel entries separate from large equipment entries should be provided to avoid opening larger doors for personnel use. This is particularly important when the door opens out on noisy or climatologically different environments. These doors should have windows.

3.3.2.3.1 Width for personnel doors. For mechanical and electrical shops the recommended width is 1.22 m (4 ft) (to accommodate small equipment vehicles as well as personnel) with 0.91m (3 ft) being the minimum width. For I&C shops, a common equipment and personnel door may be used (e.g. a double door 1.83 (6 ft) wide.)

3.3.2.3.2 Door handle. When used, such as for doors to the outside of the building, to avoid slipping a lever or bar grip with thumb latch is recommended over a ball-knob handle, clearing the door jamb by at least 102 mm (4 in.)

3.3.2.3.3 Door swing clearance. When doors swing to open, a complete door swing clearance of at least 1350 mm is recommended with a swing of 180° being preferred to assure complete movement clearance. Doors should swing into the shop to avoid corridor passage interference. Automatic closure with a kick doorstop option is recommended.

3.3.2.3.4 Automatic door operation. When small equipment and load carrying personnel frequently pass through the door, a motor-drive door should be used to ease entry. Door actuation should be by a floor pressure plate, light beam interruption, or similar device rather than by hand. In case of failure, such systems should provide for immediate manual backup and should remain open or stop movement if contact with an object occurs. Free-swing, push-to-open door with a padded door bumper may also be used and is particularly useful when personnel pushing hand trucks or carrying a load with both hands. When this free-swing type of door is used an automatic controlled door swing and a kick doorstop are recommended. Swinging doors should have clear markings on the floor to caution safety clearance margin such as a yellow caution line.

3.3.2.3.5 Sliding doors. When used, Sliding doors should have enclosed retraction plenums to prevent accidental blockage.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.3.2.4 Main aisle ways. Main aisle ways through the shop leading to large component work areas should be at least 1.83 m (6 ft) wide. Aisle ways which may have to support traffic from large vehicles such as forklifts should be at least 3.04 m (10 ft) wide).

3.3.2.5 Secondary aisle ways. Secondary aisle ways for general access (e.g. personnel and small movement aids such as carts and handtrucks) should be at least 0.91 m (3 ft) wide with 1.22 m (4 ft) recommended.

3.3.2.6 Machinery clearance. A 0.91 m (3 ft) clearance should be provided for an operator and small-part handler and a minimum of 1.52 m (5 ft) aisle width between machines.

3.3.2.7 Welding and grinding clearance. A minimum of 1.83 m (6 ft.) clearance should be provided around the welder with OSHA standards defining the requirements for ventilation and barriers.

3.3.2.8 Workshops areas not a thoroughfare. Workshop areas should not be used as major thoroughfares for all facility personnel.

3.3.2.9 Location of tool room. The tool room should be integrated within the maintenance shop area or be in proximity to the shop area.

3.3.2.10 Location of warehouse. The warehouse should be located close to the maintenance workshop.

3.3.2.11 Instrument and control facilities. Instrument and control facilities should be located near the control room.

3.3.2.12 Health physics facilities. Health Physics facilities should be located as conveniently as possible for maintenance technicians so delays in making transitions from "clean" to "hot" areas and vice versa can be avoided.

3.3.3 Environmental conditions

3.3.3.1 Proper environmental conditions. Maintenance workshops should provide proper environmental conditions in accordance with 19CFR1910.

3.3.3.1.1 Maintenance activities generating noxious byproducts. Maintenance activities that generate heat, smoke, sparks, or noxious odors should be conducted in separated, screened-in, and well-ventilated areas.

3.3.3.1.2 Noise shielding. Maintenance workshops should be properly shielded from plant noise.

3.3.3.1.3 Draft free. Workshops should be designed to be free of drafts that may cause discomfort or affect the availability of maintenance technicians to maintain close tolerances in operating plant machinery.

3.3.3.1.4 Comfort. Thermal/humidity environment within the workshop should be maintained at a comfortable level year round.

3.3.4 Workbenches. The type of tasks for which workbenches are used vary from the clean, detailed work of the I & C shop to the heavy duty, often dirty work of the mechanical shop. Some jobs may require access from more than one side. Workbench design includes bench height, surface characteristics,

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

normal usage (standing, sitting), space and access provisions for parts and tools, power outlets, lighting, clearances for legs and feet, drawers. The most common configuration is the use of stand-up benches accompanied by stools to reduce fatigue associated with long tasks. Guidelines for workbenches are listed below.

3.3.4.1 Stand-up workbenches. The higher stand-up bench reduces back-strain caused by bending over lower-level surfaces and makes access easier to test and equipment carts which are about the same height.

Workbench dimension for standing positions should conform to the following dimensions (keyed to Figure 3.3.1, Standard design for stand-up benches).

- a. Height of Test equipment shelf: 1.40 - 1.65 m (55 - 65 in.)
- b. Height of desk surface: 914-1016 mm (36-40 in., 36 in. recommended) above the floor
- c. Width: 762 mm (30 in.) maximum
- d. D. Length: As required by tasks.

3.3.4.1.1 Low height, stand-up workbenches. Where access to the top of components is difficult using the standard stand-up workbench, a bench with height comparable to the sit-down workbench (e.g. 711 - 762 mm (28 - 30 in.)) may be a good solution.

3.3.4.1.2 Podium type stand-up workbenches. Podium type workbenches or high precision surfaces should have the following dimensions (dimensions are keyed to Figure 3.3.2, Podium type workbench design):

- a. Height of working surface: 762-1016 mm (30-40 in.) above floor
- b. Width: 914 mm (36 in.) maximum
- c. Length: 1118 mm (44 in.) maximum.
- d. Height of visual display or item being manipulated: 1.78 m (70 in.) maximum

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 3.3.1. Standard design for stand-up benches.

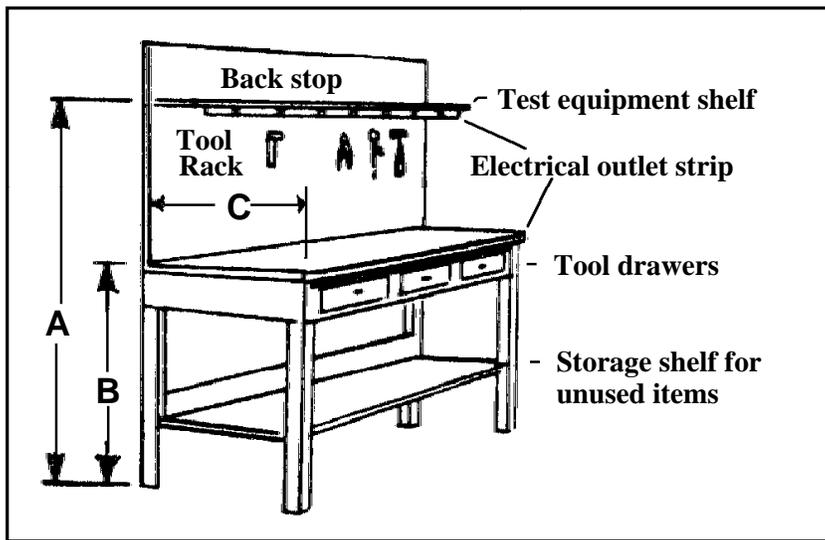
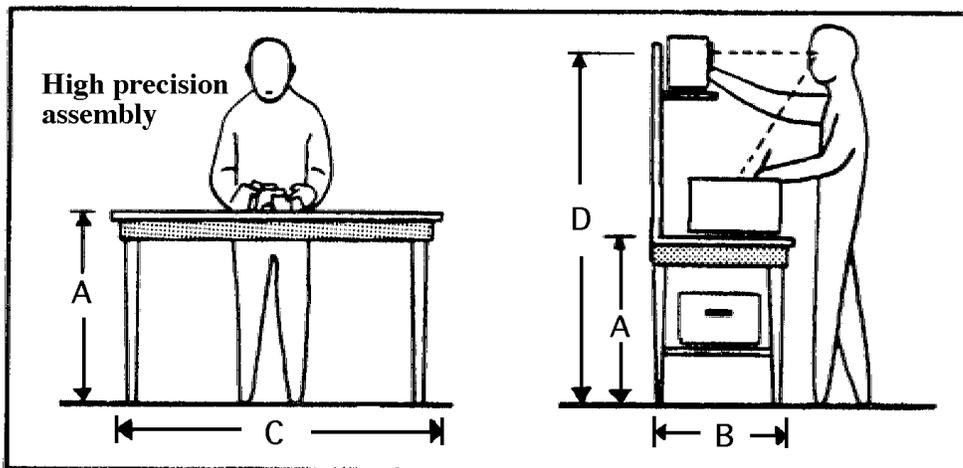


Figure 3.3.2. Podium type workbench design.



3.3.4.1.3 Stools for stand-up workbenches. Stools should be provided to reduce fatigue during long tasks. The configuration and recommended dimensions for stand-sit stools are shown below (See Figure, 3.3.3.) Other recommended features for the stand-sit stool are listed below:

- Because stools are often moved around a quick access, easy adjustment of seat height is recommended.
- Adjustable back rest with firm, padded support.
- Footrests should be provided (this may be accomplished but use of a circular bar).
- Wheels or casters should not be used.

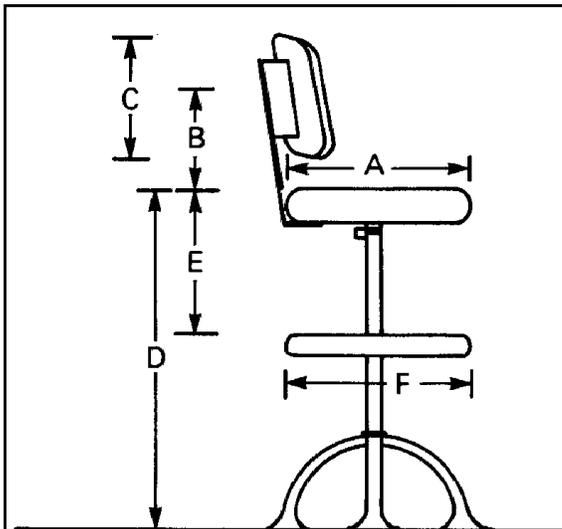
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- e. Fabric covers which allow air circulation and are less prone to cracking and tearing are preferred to plastic covers.

Recommended dimensions (given below) are keyed to the Figure 3.3.3, Stand-sit stool:

- a. Seat diameter: Approx. 381 mm (15 in.)
- b. Stool back seat support and height: 178 - 254 mm (7 - 10 in.)
- c. Back support height: 152 - 203 mm (6 - 8 in.)
- d. Seat height (adjustable): To 762 mm (30 in.)
- e. Footrest to seat: 457 mm (18 in.)
- f. Footrest diameter: 457 mm (18 in.)

Figure 3.3.3. Stand-sit- stool



3.3.4.1.4 Surface heights for stand-up desks. Recommended workbench height for differing functions are as follows:

- a. Work surfaces for supporting job instruction manuals, worksheets, and other reading materials should be 914 mm (36 in.) above the floor.
- b. For tasks requiring force, it is recommended that work surfaces be 914 mm (36 in.) above the floor.
- c. It is recommended that tasks requiring precision be done on surfaces 1016 mm (40 in.) above the floor.

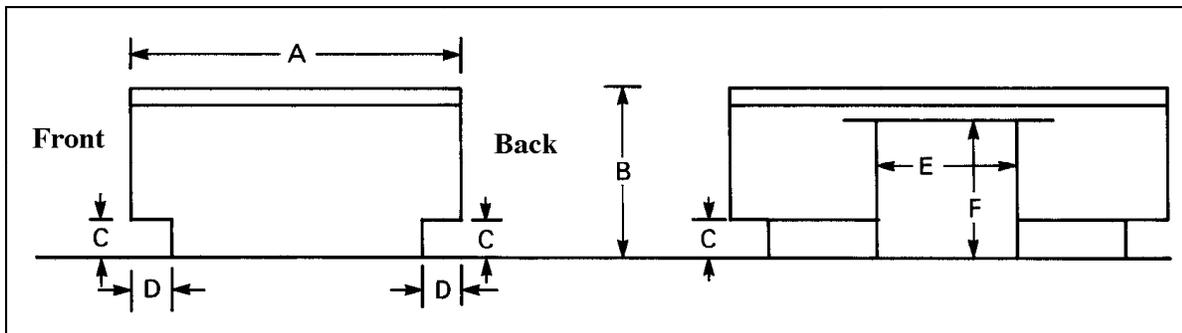
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.3.4.2 Sit-only workbench. The sit-down, desk type workbench which offers comfort and reduced fatigue for long tasks that require detailed work, should have the following dimensions (keyed to the Figure 3.3.4, Sit- only workbenches).

- a. Table depth: 711 - 762 mm (28 - 30 in.)
- b. Table height: 711 - 762 mm (28 - 30 in.)
- c. Foot insert clearance height* 102 mm (4 in.)
- d. Foot insert clearance depth* 152 mm (6 in.)
- e. Seated leg insert width clearance (min.): 660 mm (26 in.)
- f. Seated thigh vertical clearance: 660 mm. (26 in.)

*Foot insert clearance provided for standing on all sides.

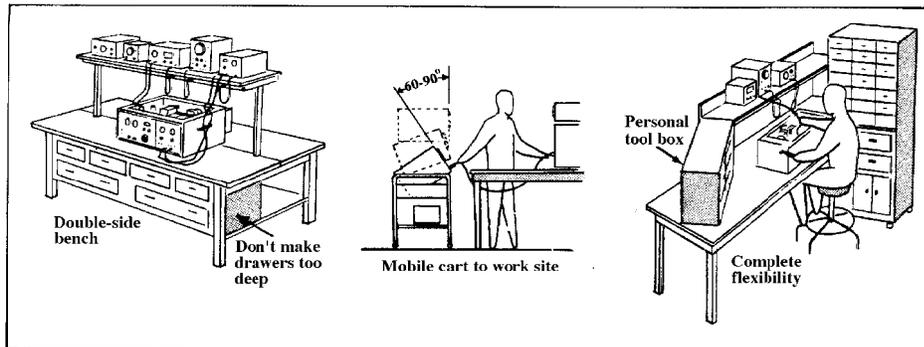
Figure 3.3.4. Sit-only workbench



3.3.4.2.1 Stools for sit-only workbenches. Recommendations for stools for sit only workbenches are similar to those for stand-up benches except that seat height should be adjustable from 15 to 21 in. and the requirement for footstool height should be adjusted accordingly.

3.3.4.3 Double-sided workbenches. Double-sided workbench and workbench accessories configuration should be as illustrated in Figure 3.3.5, Double-sided workbench design and workbench accessories.

Figure 3.3.5. Double-sided workbench design and workbench accessories



DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.3.4.4 Workbench surfaces. Different surface characteristics are required for different kinds of work. Working directly on painted metal surfaces should be avoided because the surface will scratch, chip, peel, or be left with dents. Replaceable surface materials allows greater flexibility in workbench use and table height may be varied by use of added materials.

3.3.4.4.1 Heavy duty surface. Heavy gauge steel, iron plate, or heavy wood stock may be used for this function. A sheet of wood or masonite or other similar material should be placed on these surfaces to avoid noise and mild shocks. These layers should be held in place and can be retained with screws for easy removal.

3.3.4.4.2 Light duty surface. Metal or other surface materials may be overlaid with wood or masonite. Rubber or neoprene mats can also be used.

3.3.4.4.3 Electrical work. Metal workbenches should be avoided for electrical work. A non-conductive work surface, such as a rubber mat should be used for electrical work.

3.3.4.5 Workbench aids. Workbenches should offer illumination aids; space and supports for accommodating procedures, prints, and manuals; access to power sources; vacuum and service air outlets; magnifiers as required; built-in test equipment; and overhead lift devices as needed.

3.3.4.5.1 Power outlets. Several power outlets should be provided for each workstation. To avoid obstruction, power outlets should be placed at both sides of the workbench and/or on the front face of the bench just below the work surface. Another option, especially for detailed work as in an I&C shop, is the use of small power-cord booms which carry the power cord above the work components. Retractable or coiled cords may also be used:

3.3.4.5.2 Power switches. To avoid accidental activation, power switches should be in a raised location high above the bench surface. Switch guards are also recommended.

3.3.4.5.3 Vacuum and service air outlets. Vacuum and service air outlets should be placed to the side and in higher locations. Placements on the front edge of the bench may be acceptable if protected with smooth-edge guards which also protect the worker from injury.

3.3.5 Laydown areas.

3.3.5.1 Multiple laydown areas. To minimize laydown job interference, at least two separate laydown spaces should be provided in mechanical and electrical workshops. An alternate approach is to have one much larger laydown area.

3.3.5.2 Size of laydown area. Exclusive of space for aisle ways, a minimum 12 ft by 12 ft dedicated space per laydown area is recommended.

3.3.5.3 Laydown environmental control. Adequate environmental control including heating, ventilation, and air conditioning should be provided. If the space is near doors or other openings to the outside, protective barriers should be provided.

3.3.5.4 Lighting. Adequate overhead lighting should be provided with space and power being allowed for portable lamps and stands where required. Where equipment is to be used in enclosures and is not subject to blackout or special low-level lighting requirements, illumination levels shall be as specified by Table 3.1, Specific task illumination requirements. Illumination shall be distributed to reduce glare and specular

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

reflection. In situations where standards for illumination level are not available, test for visibility under these conditions should be conducted. Capability for dimming shall be provided. Adequate illumination shall be provided for maintenance tasks. General and supplementary lighting shall be used as appropriate to ensure that illumination is compatible with each task situation. Portable lights should be provided for personnel performing visual tasks in areas where fixed illumination is not provided. For display lighting, see Table 3.1, Specific task illumination requirements.

Table 3.1. Specific task illumination requirements.

Illumination levels		
Work area or type of task	Lux* fc	
	Recommended	Minimum
Assembly, general		
coarse	540 (50)	325 (30)
medium	810 (75)	540 (50)
fine	1075 (100)	810 (75)
precise	3230 (300)	2155 (200)
Bench work		
rough	540 (50)	325 (30)
medium	810 (75)	540 (50)
fine	1615 (150)	1075 (100)
extra fine	3230 (300)	2155 (200)
Business machine operation (calculator, digital, input, etc.)	1075 (100)	540 (50)
Console surface	540 (50)	325 (30)

3.3.5.5 Drains. Drains should be provided at the periphery of all laydown spaces to direct the flow of liquids away from the work area (for example, pump disassembly generally causes water spillage and solvents or port-work washdown requirements are other common sources of liquids).

3.3.5.6 Service air. Service air outlets should be available near laydown areas to avoid the need for extended air hoses across the shop.

3.3.5.7 Power outlets. Multiple power outlets near laydown work areas should be provided for power tools, lamps, and similar aids.

3.3.5.8 Pallets and laydown platforms. Except in cases of very large components, use of pallets or laydown platforms is recommended to avoid contamination with accumulated oil, small scraps, solvents, water, etc.

3.3.5.9 Platforms. Platforms should be used when workers must have access to lower portions of the worked on component as well as to the top and sides. Platforms about 457 mm (18 in) high or with adjustable heights are recommended. A platform size of 762 mm by 1219 mm (30 in by 48 in.) is recommended.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.3.6 Overhead lift devices. Overhead lift devices such as the bridge crane, monorail, fixed crane or davit, and fixed beam hoist points should be provided as needed. The bridge crane provides the most flexibility (See also Section 4.4, Cradles, cranes, hoists, padeyes).

3.3.6.1 Bridge crane. The bridge crane should be at least 4.57 m (15 ft.) above the floor to allow safe passage over all floor obstructions.

3.3.6.2 Monorail. The monorail should have a clearance of from 2.44 m - 3.05 m (8 - 10 ft) Floor clearance should be provided directly below and throughout the track route. To avoid interference with laydown work in progress, it should be located adjacent to, but not directly over laydown areas.

3.3.6.3 Fixed crane or davit. The fixed crane or davit should have a 1.83 m - 3.05 m (6 - 10 ft) clearance. Floor clearance should be provided directly below the total arc. Stops should be provided for safe clearance of walls and obstructions. The fixed crane or davit should be located near or over laydown areas or heavy repair workbenches and at yard entries for truck load and unload operations.

3.3.6.4 Fixed-beam hoist points. Attached at the ceiling, a 2.44 m - 3.05 m (8 - 10 ft) clearance should be allowed. Fixed-beam hoists should be located over laydown areas to aid lift and transfer of heavy components of movement aids.

3.4 Radiological Workshops

3.4.1 General principles

3.4.1.1 Need for Radiological workshops. Separate "radiological workshops" should be available in normally contaminated areas. Although expedients such as tents, glove boxes, portable walls, plastic, fabric, or wood barriers may be used, inclusion of hot work in otherwise clean shops, such as working on contaminated hardware, can contaminate clean access routes and the clean shops themselves. When work is done with contaminated materials, boundaries of contaminated "hot" areas should be clearly marked and labeled. Unless otherwise specified or contravened by the guidelines for radiological workshops, the guidelines in Section 3.3, Workshops, in this document, should also be followed.

3.4.1.2 Enclosing radiological work areas or glove boxes. Radiological work areas should be fully enclosed or glove boxes provided to avoid spreading contaminated particles that may result when contaminated components are repaired.

3.4.2 Layout and relationship to other activities

3.4.2.1 Direct openings to outside. To control contamination, direct openings to the outside from the hot workshop should be avoided. Where access is required, a foyer, corridor, or similar interim enclosure should be used. To the degree possible, access routes should be isolated from clean areas. Opening doors should not cause drafts into or out of the shop.

3.4.2.2 Items provided at entrance/exit points. Where the shop exit does not lead directly into a plant hot area, the shop exit requires protective garment removal, step-off pad, waste handling barrels (for garments), and a cart or table for health physics monitoring gear should be provided.

3.4.3 Workshop layout. Workshop layout should increase ease of flow of materials and personnel and decrease potential exposure.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.4.3.1 Aisle ways. Aisle ways should be straight and branch at 90° to provide adequate space for turning radiuses.

3.4.3.2.1. Avoid traffic through central shop area. Major aisles and entries should be placed to prevent primary traffic passage through the central shop area. Traffic flows near workbenches and machinery should be minimized.

3.4.3.3 Workstations and equipment. Workstations and equipment should be placed parallel or at 90° to aisle ways to retain the same advantage for access and movement.

3.4.3.4 Drains. Drains should be placed at peripheries of aisle ways and work areas to drain fluids away from these areas and to minimize long floor drain runs.

3.4.3.5 Service outlets. Service outlets for power and air should be placed to minimize the number of cords and lines that cross aisle ways and laydown areas or workstations.

3.4.3.6 Boundary lines. Boundary lines should be painted on the floor to define required clearances. Solid barriers should be used to ensure hazardous clearances and to support environmental control requirements.

3.4.3.7 Laydown areas. Laydown areas should be clear of aisles and protected from machinery and potentially hazardous work areas. There should be wide aisle access to laydown areas.

3.4.3.8 Work areas with out-of-shop interfaces. Work areas such as tool crib and office spaces that have out-of-shop interfaces should be placed to minimize traffic through the shop.

3.4.3.9 Protective clothing and wrapping. Assigned space should be adequate to allow for the use of protective clothing, use of protective wrapping.

3.4.4 Minimizing contaminants at workstations. The following steps should be taken to minimize the opportunity for accumulation of contaminants at workstations:

- a. Small openings and cracks in which contaminated dust and dirt can collect should be avoided.
- b. Porous surfaces should be coated with a sealer.
- c. Metal workbenches should be used where feasible.
- d. Replaceable surface materials including replaceable plastic wrap should be used on workbench surfaces and for other areas as applicable.
- e. Aids such as lamps and special tools at the workstation should be provided to increase efficiency and minimize time needed in the hot environment.

3.4.5 Laydown surfaces. The need to protect against the spread of contamination and reduce personnel exposure requires special hot shop design and practices for laydown surfaces including those listed below.

3.4.5.1 Sealing walls and floors. Walls and floors should be sealed to avoid accumulation of a contaminating residue.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.4.5.2 Floor area size. hot shop laydown floor areas should be at least as large as those for comparable clean shops.

3.4.5.3 Surface preparation. Prior to work, the floor should be prepared by first spreading heavy-duty paper or plastic sheeting and taping it down at the edges. Similar surface preparation should be done for pallet laydown or with raised platforms.

3.4.5.4 Drains. To avoid accumulation of contaminated fluids, drains should be placed at the periphery of laydown surfaces. Washdowns and wipedowns should also have adequate draining.

3.4.5.5 Barrier protection. Barrier protection varying from simple distance from hot equipment to block walls and lead blankets or sheathing should be used to minimize exposure.

3.4.6 Lift and movement aids. To minimize personnel exposure, lift and movement aids should be provided. Examples of such aids are monorails, fixed-beam hoist points, hand trucks, dollies, carts, and portable lifts. Interruptions to smooth rolling should be avoided at the entrance.

3.4.7 Tool storage. Open shelves and hanging tools should be used in preference to a central enclosed storage area to minimize bulk storage and contaminated tool handling. Machinery should have associated storage and access to machine tools and parts.

3.4.8 Documentation handling. Separated and enclosed cabinets may help delay contamination of document. To move documentation such as checklist and QA signoffs to uncontaminated areas, a copy machine may be installed at the shop barrier to emit copies on the clean side. Where documentation is provided electronically such as through use of notepads, laptops, or desktop computers, the electronic documents can be transmitted to computers (or printers) in the uncontaminated area for subsequent printing.

3.4.9 Decontamination. Adjacent health physics facilities are generally adequate for personnel decontamination. Consultation with health-physics personnel is recommended to provide the most cost-effective techniques and adequate provisions of drains, basins, and similar washdown and cleaning needs. Protective wrapping is also recommended for this purpose.

3.5 Other shop and office areas

3.5.1 Toolrooms and toolroom arrangement.

3.5.1.1 Toolroom location. Unique tools and small supplies of common tools that support anticipated maintenance activities in a given area should be stored at or near the location where they will be used. Although Maintenance personnel generally prefer that the central tool storage area or bin be located in the immediate vicinity of their workshops, placement of other local tool areas throughout the plant can increase work efficiency (for example a toolroom in containment housing specialized tools used in containment during outages) .

3.5.1.2 Tool storage. Tools should be stored in an organized manner so that they can be easily identified, removed for use, and replaced.

3.5.1.2.1 Functional arrangement of tools. Tools should be arranged according to function and can be hung up on racks or walls.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.5.1.2.2 Use of painted outline. A painted outline may be used for each specific tool to provide a cue to its assigned place in the crib.

3.5.1.2.3 Tools requiring frequent maintenance or checks. Tools requiring frequent preventive maintenance or operational checks such as tool bits, drills, vacuum cleaners, and sanders may be placed in one section of the toolroom.

3.5.2 Rest and break provisions. Rest and break areas such as cafeterias, snack rooms and diversion and exercise areas should be provided in or near the workshop to improve job performance and efficiency.

3.5.3 Technical library. Maintenance technicians should have easy access to a well-organized and controlled technical library which includes procedures, vendors' manuals, plant schematics, etc.

3.5.4 Clerical support staff offices. A clerical staff may be needed to relieve supervisor and foreman workloads and to assist shop personnel. Suggested considerations include:

- a. Direct access by supervisory and shop personnel
- b. Ample storage provisions for manuals, prints, and historical files.
- c. Office machines which may include typewriters, computers and related hardware such as printers, copy machines, microfiche reader and printer, and a lamination machine for protection of high use documentation.

3.5.5 Specialized support offices. Where needed, space should be assigned for support specialists such as planners, engineers, and technicians. Typical needs include computers, drafting boards, file cabinets, wall display boards, and a desk and/or table with chairs.

3.6 Storage areas (2.1.4.5)

3.6.1 Determination of storage requirements. Storage area volume, space, and location including warehouse, workshop, and various yard storage requirements, should be determined through a systematic analysis of storage needs.

3.6.1.1 Storage for seasonal items. Organized storage facilities should be available for seasonally used items such as fans and heaters.

3.6.1.2 Storage items used repeatedly. Adequate storage should be provided for materials and spares used on a recurrent basis that are not kept in a warehouse.

3.6.1.3 Materials used during overhauls and outages. Special storage should be provided for tools and special equipment used during overhauls or outages.

3.6.1.4 Contaminated equipment. Special storage should be provided for contaminated equipment that is used during outages.

3.6.2 Administrative controls for spare parts. An administrative computer based program for monitoring, maintaining, reordering, and issuing spare parts should be established. Parts received should be categorized, and personnel should be assigned responsibility for maintaining the parts inventory.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Issuance procedures should be established so that only storekeepers, not maintainers, retrieve warehouse stores.

3.6.2.1 Shelf life. For items which have a specified “shelf life” after which their use is not recommended, a program should be developed for tracking the item in storage and for the disposing and replacing of it after the specified shelf life. The program should include reviews of environmental considerations related to the shelf life of the item.

3.6.3 Temperature and humidity control. Stored items such as adhesives, solvents, welding rods, calibration and test instruments, gaskets, and paper require control of temperature and humidity; consequently, provision should be made for space needed for air conditioners, refrigerators, and sealed containers with environmental controls.

3.6.4 Protection of stored materials. Protection of stored materials from sources of contamination should be provided. In general, it is better to isolate sources of contamination, such as machinery and work areas, from stored materials than to devise ways of protecting stored materials from contamination.

3.6.5 Hazardous materials. Separate, clearly labeled enclosures should be provided for hazardous materials. Cabinets should be painted in accordance with the plant-coding scheme with yellow or red being recommended. Items should be stored separately according to the communality of safety provisions (for example, contaminated equipment should be stored separately from flammable, volatile, caustic materials. Placards should be posted to identify the hazards and accident- reducing procedures.

3.6.6 Fragile items. Fragile items may be stored in the protective packaging in which they were shipped; consequently, storage areas should be designed with enough space to accommodate this packaging. When unpacked, these items should be stored individually in bins or drawers with partitions so that one can be handled without disturbing others. In some cases, cushioned liners may be needed; however, highly porous foam should not be used with instruments having protruding parts which may catch on the foam. Sets of flat drawers are recommended for storage of different sizes and types of gaskets and can be labeled accordingly.

3.6.7 Document storage. Space should be provided for storage of documentation at workbenches and at craft paperwork areas. This document storage includes prints, technical manuals, and procedures.

3.6.7.1 Print storage. Whether stored within individual shops or in a common area, adequate storage should be provided for prints required in each workshop. Print storage and handling considerations include

- a. Protected storage for minimizing wear and aging of prints
- b. A convenient location
- c. A scheme for indexing and accessing parts
- d. Nearby print laydown surfaces for temporary use
- e. Copy capability or other measures to allow shop personnel to take prints to workstations or other plant sites.

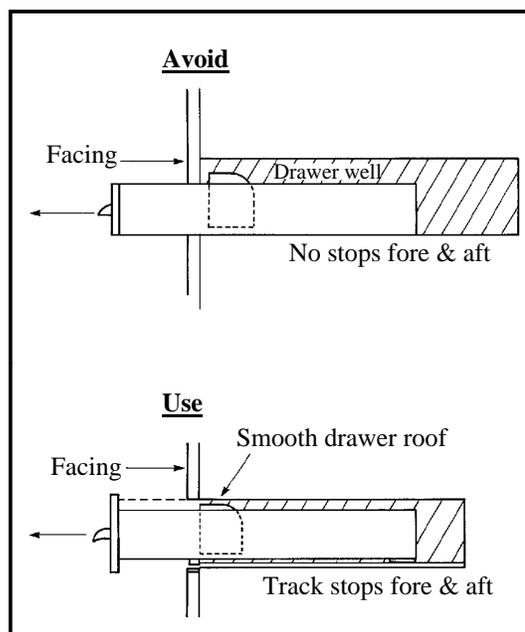
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

3.6.8 Personal storage. To avoid clutter and to provide individual control over personal items such as coats, hats, and lunch pails, storage for personal items should be provided such as in the form of stacked lockers.

3.6.9 Use of modular drawer cabinets and steel shelving. Modular drawer cabinets can be placed side by side and back to back for concentrated small-part storage, and steel shelving can be stacked on top to hold larger cartons.

3.6.9.1 Drawer design. Drawers should have flexible dividers and should roll out to full view for easy retrieval of a variety of parts. The use of adjustable shelving permits easy restocking and convenient bulk storage. Drawers should be provided with a safety stop at full extension to avoid accidental withdrawal of the entire drawer. The upper part of the drawer's enclosure should be smooth to avoid catching items as the drawer is withdrawn. Runner tracks should be incorporated to avoid binding during drawer withdrawal (See also Figure 3.6.1, Drawer design features).

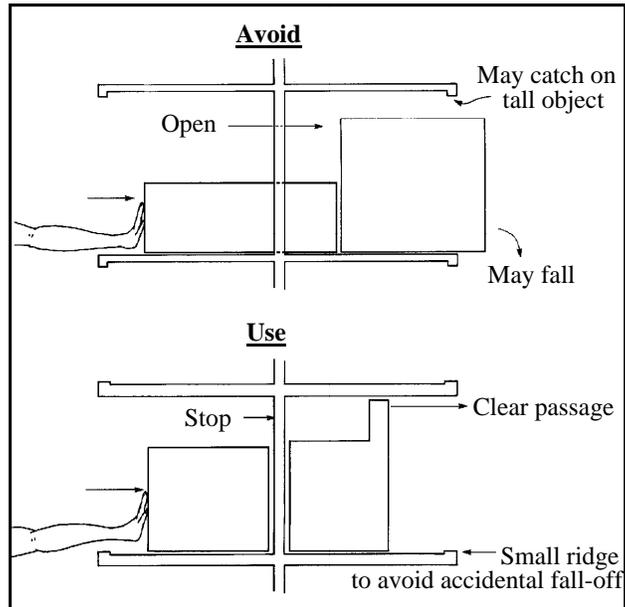
Figure 3.6.1. Drawer design features.



3.6.9.2 Shelf design. Where shelves are used to store items, open two-sided shelves should be avoided because items can be pushed off the opposite side. Small ridges at shelf edges should be considered to prevent roll-off of items. Downward protrusions from upper shelves should be avoided. The highest shelf should not exceed 1.78 m (70 in.) for visibility and safe access.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 3.6.2. Open shelf design feature.



3.6.10 Storage bins. Storage bins should provide adequate visibility into the bin, the ability to withdraw any given bin, and adequate depth of the bin front. The upper edge of the bin closure should not be so high as to preclude being able to look down into the bin. Storage bins can be made by placing tote boxes on open shelves having a forward edge ridge.

3.6.11 Labeling. All storage locations throughout the shop should be labeled according to a standard scheme.

3.6.12 Control and inventory. Maintenance related items including those stored in special locations should be controlled and inventoried.

3.6.13 Storage does not interfere with traffic. Items should be stored so as not to interfere with normal entrance and exit pathways, vehicular traffic paths, and emergency escape routes.

3.6.14 Emergency storage.

3.6.14.1 Emergency equipment and supplies. Adequate and suitable space for emergency equipment and supplies should be provided so they are readily accessible and they can be kept in an immediately usable state.

3.6.14.2 Hostile Environments. Equipment such as air packs, protective clothing, and flashlights should be located so that operators and maintenance personnel do not have to traverse "hostile" environment to reach it. For instance, flashlights should be located so that in the event of station blackout, they can be reached by operators and maintenance personnel relying solely on battery pack installed lighting. In the event of contamination, air packs should be reachable without exposing operators and maintenance personnel to toxic or contaminated air.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.0 MAINTENANCE SUPPORT EQUIPMENT

Maintenance Support Equipment (MSE) refers to apparatus which are used for handling, lifting, positioning, towing, fueling, and lubricating tasks in the performance of maintenance. Specific apparatus included are jacks, cradles, cranes, hoists, elevators, and various remote handling equipment. Excluded from this definition are tools and test and service equipment.

4.1 General guidelines

4.1.1 Maintenance Support Equipment Design. All maintenance support equipment should be selected and designed so that it:

- a. Is as simple as possible to operate, use, and maintain.
- b. Is compatible with the maintainability features built into related equipment, and with the maintenance environment in which it will be used.
- c. Provides maximum protection for components and working parts to minimize the need for repair.

4.2 Vehicles

4.2.1 Manual vehicles. Vehicles in the form of hand trucks and dollies should be provided for handling smaller loads.

4.2.1.1 Clearance for hand trucks. Turning clearances should accommodate at least the length of the truck plus the handler. A minimum turning clearance of 1.22 m (4 ft.) is recommended. Floor surfaces should also have no obstructions that would interfere with the use of the hand truck.

4.2.1.2 Steering control for dollies. Steering control is best with two rear wheels and two forward casters. Four casters may be used to increase maneuverability and reduce the turning radius, but the dolly will then require greater care in handling.

4.2.1.3 Handles for dollies. Handles should be provided for dollies to increase steering control. Handles should be easy to remove to achieve greater clearance for load and unload movements.

4.2.1.4 Wheel and caster locks. Wheel and caster locks should be provided to stabilize the dolly during loading and unloading.

4.2.1.5 Powered dollies. Powered dollies should be considered because their powered drive and steering capability make handling safer and more convenient.

4.2.1.6 Cradle. A cradle should be used for securing rounded or cylindrical components placed on dollies or other flat surfaces.

4.2.1.7 Carriages. Carriages, a load bearing framework on wheels, may be useful for moving heavy tool boxes and drums found in most electrical and mechanical shops.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.2.2 Powered vehicles.

Powered vehicles should be provided for handling large, heavy loads.

4.2.2.1 Vision. Vehicle operators should be positioned so that they can see the periphery of the vehicle and its load in relation to pathway obstructions. The operator should be able to continuously observe the load as it is raised, lowered, or otherwise moved.

4.2.2.2 Control and display position. Controls and displays required to operate the vehicle should be located so that the operator can reach or see them while visually monitoring vehicle and load clearance.

4.2.2.3 Guards and screens. Appropriate guards or screens should be provided to prevent materials or components being transported from toppling onto the operator.

4.2.2.4 Warning system. A warning system should be provided to indicate when a load is too heavy or when an load shift is approaching the imbalance point.

4.2.2.5 Fail safe features. Fail safe features should be provided to prevent drivers from leaving the vehicle unsecured on an incline or in gear.

4.2.2.6. Gasoline engines. Because of ventilation problems, power sources other than gasoline should be used where feasible. Adequate ventilation should be provided in areas where gasoline vehicles are used.

4.2.2.7 Air cushion aids. Where flat, regular floor surfaces are available, air cushion aids may be used to move heavy objects using shop service air to float the load on a film of air. These aids may be effective load-transfer vehicles because the power source is convenient, minimal force is required to move heavy objects, maintenance requirements are low, and passage clearance needs are reduced.

4.3 Design principles for jacks

4.3.1 Transportation, handling, and storage. Jacks should be designed so they can be transported, handled, and stored easily.

4.3.1.1 Small jacks. Small jacks that must be lifted and carried by one person should not exceed 18.14 kg (40 lbs).

4.3.1.2 Larger jacks. Larger jacks should be mounted on wheeled carts that have locking wheels. Repositioning and accurate centering can be accomplished using a cart with swivel wheels.

4.3.1.3 Large hydraulic jacks. Large hydraulic jacks may be designed with wheels that may be retracted or folded into the base of the cart, thus allowing the Ram base to touch the ground for added stability.

4.3.2 Jack handles. Jack handles should be removable or folding. If a jack handle is left protruding during maintenance, there is a possibility that personnel or equipment may strike against the handle, knocking the jack from under the load.

4.3.3 Label contents. Jacks should be labeled to show direction of crank rotation for raising or lowering as well as maximizing the load they are designed to handle.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.3.4 Access plates for hydraulic jacks. On hydraulic jacks, one or more access plates, at least 152 mm (6 in.) in diameter, should be permitted to allow inspection and cleaning of the hydraulic fluid reservoir.

4.3.5 Safety-locking devices. Mechanical safety-locking devices should be provided to prevent accidental lowering of the load in the event of hydraulic system failure.

4.4 Cradles, cranes, hoists, padeyes

4.4.1 General principles

4.4.1.1 Control labels. All controls used with lifting equipment should be labeled as to function and direction of movement. Controls should conform to normal movement relationships, e.g. moving the steering wheel clockwise will move the vehicle to the right.

4.4.1.2 Control placement. The placement of controls should be within convenient reach of the seated operator; the placement should afford optimum visibility at all times.

4.4.1.3 Load capacity. The load capacity should be indicated on the equipment using a substantial and durable rating chart with clearly legible letters and figures. The rating chart should be securely fixed and be easily visible to the operator while seated at his control station.

4.4.1.4 Load-indicating devices. Load-indicating devices should be used for loads of uncertain weight which could be 90-100% of the manufacturer's rated capacity for the equipment or within the maximum working load of any part of the tackle. Load-indicating devices should also be used where the equipment tackle configuration could result in a greater stress of the hoist or tackle than would result from apparent hook load. Audible warning devices should be provided when necessary to indicate that the allowable load is being exceeded.

4.4.1.5 Access. Where not otherwise specified in this document, access dimensions for construction machinery should conform to SAEJ925 (Society of Automotive Engineers), as applicable.

4.4.1.6 Handholds and footholds. Suitable handholds and footholds should be provided to facilitate personnel access and movement.

4.4.2 Design principles for cradles

4.4.2.1 Load positioning. Cradles should be designed so that a load can be quickly, effectively, and safely positioned on them.

4.4.2.1.1 Facilitating positioning of equipment and loads. Positioning of equipment and loads should be facilitated by using center-of-gravity identification, matching guidelines, identification of attaching points, detachable probes, etc. Latches on control levers should not cause delay in operation

4.4.2.2 Cradle shape and use of adapters. Cradles should be shaped to fit the equipment to be carried. Cradles may be adjustable or fitted with adapters to handle various sizes of equipment.

4.4.2.3 Load bearing area. The cradle should have sufficient load-bearing area to support the load when the equipment must remain on the cradle without support bands or hoists.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.4.2.4 Metal straps. Metal straps should be provided for attaching equipment to the cradle during positioning procedures.

4.4.2.5 Controls for positioning when cradles part of other equipment. If cradles are designed as integral parts of other equipment, basic equipment with controls for positioning the cradle should be provided.

4.4.2.6 Platform. When practical, a platform should be attached to the lift cradle to allow a technician standing on the platform to directly observe positioning of the component.

4.4.2.7 Safety devices to prevent load dropping. Mechanical safety devices should be provided to prevent inadvertent dropping of the load because of hydraulic failure. Check valves or ratchet devices are acceptable safety provisions.

4.4.3 Design principles for cranes

4.4.3.1 Through type bolts. "Through" type bolts with conventional nuts and lock washers or lock nuts should be used for assembling structured members.

4.4.3.2 Hook eyes for easy assembly. Hook eyes should be provided on boom sections at the centers of gravity for easy boom assembly and disassembly.

4.4.3.3 Adjustable boom length. Provisions for adjusting the boom length to accommodate operational requirements and to make the equipment more versatile should be provided when possible.

4.4.3.4 Winch assemblies. Two identical and interchangeable winch assemblies should be provided to operate the cables of the crane, one for hoisting the load and the other for controlling the boom height.

4.4.3.5 Bridge cranes. The bridge crane should be used as the primary crane because it provides the capacity and flexibility to meet lift and movement requirements.

4.4.3.6 Supplementing Bridge Cranes. To avoid delays during peak work periods, fixed davits and cranes as well as portable cranes should be used to supplement bridge cranes.

4.4.3.7 Cranes mounted. Heavy maintenance support equipment such as portable electric winches and cranes should be mounted for ease of movement; however, wide clearance should be allowed to accommodate the broad base needed for the stability of the crane

4.4.3.8 View of work. Maximum, unobstructed view of the work, including the point sheaves of the basic boom of a revolving crane at a 3-m (10 ft) radius, should be available to suitably clothed and equipped users with relevant body dimensions varying between 5th and 95th percentiles.

4.4.3.8.1 Operator cab rotation. The operator's cab should rotate with the crane to allow continuous surveillance of the work operation.

4.4.3.8.2 Crane operator's seat location. The crane operator's seat should be located to allow optimum view of the load, ground, and equipment in the vicinity, and at the same time permit easy operation of the crane's controls.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.4.3.9 Communication from bridge crane cab. The operator should be provided with a means of communication such as a signal person, telephone, or two-way radio, particularly when the load block is positioned so that the operator cannot have a full view of the load block and its surroundings.

4.4.3.10 Egress. For cab operated cranes there should be at least two means of egress from the crane, remote from each other, to permit departure under emergency conditions.

4.4.3.11 Escape and descent if bridge crane becomes disabled in mid-traverse. A collapsible ladder or escape harness and evacuation reel should be provided for the bridge crane operator in case the crane becomes disabled in mid-traverse.

4.4.3.12 Crane lights. Lights should be mounted on cranes used outdoors so that movement of the load carried by the crane can be followed during night operation.

4.4.4 Design principles for hoists

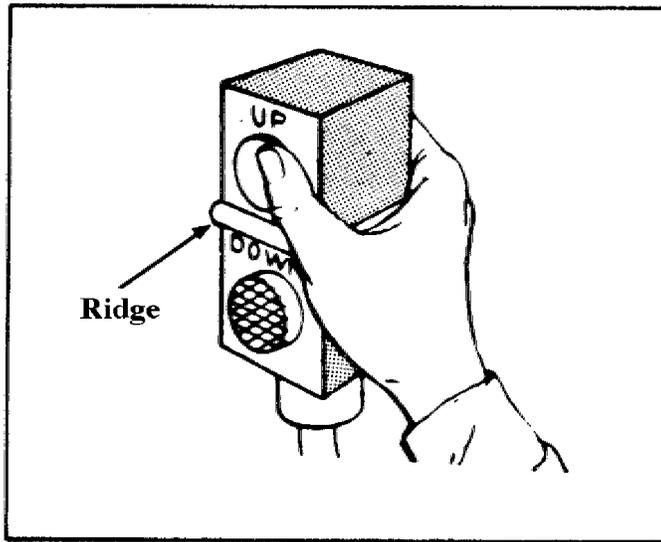
4.4.4.1 Monorails. Monorails should be considered for areas where overhead clearance is less than required for a bridge crane.

4.4.4.1.1 Maximum load capacity. Maximum load capacity should be plainly posted at several points.

4.4.4.2 Fixed-beam hoisting. Fixed beams should be provided for hoists to transfer loads on and off small scale vehicles, down staircases, and in areas where obstructions are in the way of a straight upward lift and where hoist-and-trolley operations are needed.

4.4.4.2.1 Safety load limits. Safety load limits should be plainly posted on the fixed beams used for hoisting.

4.4.4.3 Hand held control box. Hoist controls should be incorporated into a portable, lightweight, hand-held control box. The box should have the following design features (see also Figure 4.4.1, Hand-held hoist control box.)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Figure 4.4.1. Hand-held hoist control box.**

- a. Two spring-load, recessed pushbuttons, one above the other should be used as controls. The top button should be "green" and labeled "Up," the bottom button should be "red" and labeled "Down." Where possible, color code functions: up should be green, and down should be red.
- b. Each pushbutton should have a flat (or slightly concave) surface, large enough to be pushed, repeatedly, without discomfort. Pressure to activate either button should be 2.8-11.2 N (10-40 oz).
- c. A 50.8 mm (2 in.) clearance should be provided between each pushbutton to further prevent accidental activation of the wrong button. Ridging between the buttons should be provided.
- d. The control box should be manageable enough so the technician can reach both control buttons while holding the box securely and comfortably in one hand.

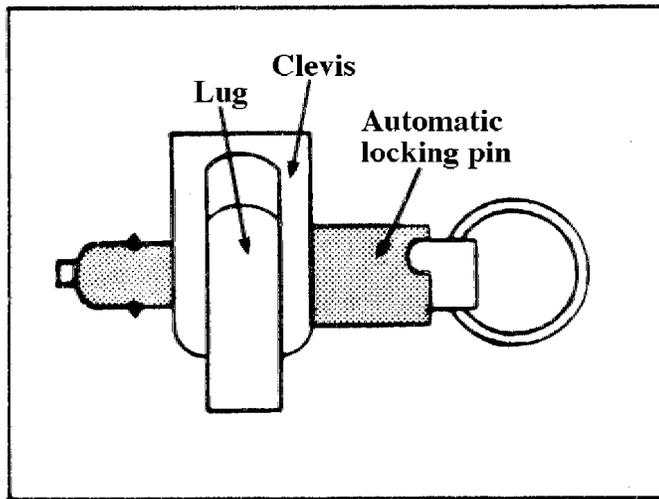
4.4.4.4 Location of moving parts. Moving parts such as belts, chains, gears, and linkages should be placed where operations and maintenance personnel are least likely to come into contact with them. Guards should be provided if danger from contact exists.

4.4.4.5 Lug clearance. Sufficient clearance for lugs used for attaching hoist beams to equipment structures should be provided so the attachment can be made easily and quickly.

4.4.4.6 Pins and matching lugs. Pins should have automatic locking features and do not require the insertion of cotter pins for locking. The pins should be attached to the hoist by a wire or chain. Matching lugs should be provided on the component or cradle so that the hoist beam lugs can be set into the matching lugs to facilitate insertion. (See also Figure, 4.4.2, Example of hoist lug and lock pin.)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.4.2. Example of hoist lug and lock pin.



4.4.4.7 Brakes. Each independent hoisting unit should be equipped with:

- a. At least one holding brake applied directly to the motor shaft or to some part of the gear train.
- b. Controlled-braking e.g., a means to control lowering speed (this does not apply to worm-gear hoists with a worm angle that prevents the load from accelerating in the direction) of lowering.

4.4.4.7.1 Automatic braking. Holding brakes on hoists should be applied automatically when the power is removed. When power-operated brakes with no continuous mechanical linkage between actuating and braking means are used, an automatic mechanism to set the brake when power is removed should be provided.

4.4.5 Padeyes. Where essentially vertical lifts may be needed, padeyes should be placed above equipment weighing in excess of 22.68 kg (50 lb) to support anticipated maintenance activities.

4.5 Elevators

4.5.1 Passenger and freight elevators. Both passenger and freight elevators should be provided to satisfy the differing requirements for moving people and equipment. In general, passenger elevators should not be used to carry equipment and freight elevators should not be used to move people.

4.5.2 Determine use. Features such as door width and carrying capacity should only be specified after the planned use of the elevator has been determined.

4.5.3 Carrying capacity of freight elevators. Carrying capacities of freight elevators should be at least 907.20 kg (2000 lb).

4.5.4 Passenger elevator capacity. Passenger elevators should be able to accommodate an injured person on a stretcher.

4.5.5 Elevator coverage. Elevator coverage should extend to each location and level of the facility that maintenance personnel must reach to service heavy equipment.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.5.5.1 Straight-line coverage. Elevators should provide straight-line coverage from the lowest to the highest elevations in the facility, avoiding the need to transfer personnel and materials from one elevator to another at some mid-point elevation.

4.5.6 Reliability. Elevators should be designed for reliable service in their intended environments, e.g., high temperature, humidity, radiation.

4.5.6.1 Ruggedness. Elevator controls and other features should be sturdy enough to preclude damage when equipment is being moved.

4.5.7 Unobstructed access. Elevators should be located so that normal points of ingress and egress will not be obstructed by structural features such as pillars. Freight elevators should have unobstructed equipment access.

4.5.8 Access not through high radiation levels. Access to any given elevator should not be precluded by high radiation levels or contamination that develops subsequent to initial operation. Consideration should be given to radiation and contamination levels that may build up over plant life.

4.5.9 Drive machinery in non-contaminated areas. Where possible, elevator drive machinery which requires access for preventive and corrective maintenance should be located in non-contaminated areas although the elevator may provide service within contaminated areas of the facility. In cases where such placement is unavoidable, the drive machinery should be adequately shielded to allow its maintenance. (

4.5.10 Padding. Elevators that are used to transport hardware should be padded or otherwise protected to withstand potential damage.

4.5.11 Emergency escape and communication devices. Elevators that are located in potentially hazardous areas should have emergency escape and/or communication devices.

4.5.12 Labeling. Controls and floor destinations should be clearly labeled and should conform to signal/labeling requirements. Where applicable, the top button should be green and labeled up; the bottom button should be red and labeled down.

4.5.13 Directional cues. When possible, provide directional cues (such as pointing arrowheads) for up and down.

4.5.14 Floor indication displays. Floor indication displays should be placed above the doorway inside the elevator as well as above every floor's elevator ingress/egress point.

4.5.15 Illuminated control buttons and floor indicators. Elevator call push buttons and floor indicators on control panels should illuminate when a control button is activated and when a particular floor is reached.

4.5.16 Maximum load signs. Maximum load signs, located where they can be easily seen and where they conform to sign/labeling requirements should be provided. Additional cautions signs should be posted where workers might be tempted to carry heavy equipment and overload it. (Sect. 7.9, Elevators, inclinators, and hydraulic-operated work platforms.)

4.5.17 Freight elevator sign. A sign barring passengers other than the operator and freight handlers should be placed inside elevators designated for freight only.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.5.18 Illumination. Interiors of elevators should be well illuminated under normal conditions, and light colors should be used for the elevator's walls, ceiling, and floor to help distribute interior illumination. An emergency light source independent of main power supply should be provided in the elevator.

4.5.19 Automatic braking. An automatic fail-safe brake, or other self-locking device should be provided in case the lift mechanism fails.

4.5.20 Limit stops. Limit stops to prevent injury to personnel and damage to equipment should be provided

4.5.21 Guards. Guards should be provided to prevent the accidental operation of the lift. (For example, consider guarding the "Emergency Stop" switch.)

4.6 Remote handling equipment

4.6.1 Characteristics of equipment to be handled remotely

4.6.1.1 Component compatibility. Components to be handled remotely should be tested for compatibility with the remote handling system before being included in system design and consecutive tasks and subtasks should be organized to maximize operator performance.

4.6.1.2 Design for disassembly. Equipment which must be remotely handled should be designed so that it can be broken down completely by the remote manipulator.

4.6.1.3 Quick-disconnect. Quick-disconnect devices should be provided to reduce remote handling difficulties

4.6.1.4 Alignment. Self-alignment devices (for example, grooved components that must be aligned properly to fit together) should be provided for components which must be joined remotely.

4.6.1.5 Fasteners. All fasteners should be designed so that they are not easily dislodged by accidental jostling and are readily replaceable by remote-handling techniques.

4.6.1.6 Lock and latching mechanisms. Each lock or latching mechanism should be operable from a single point, have a positive catch, and provide a clear visual indication of latch position.

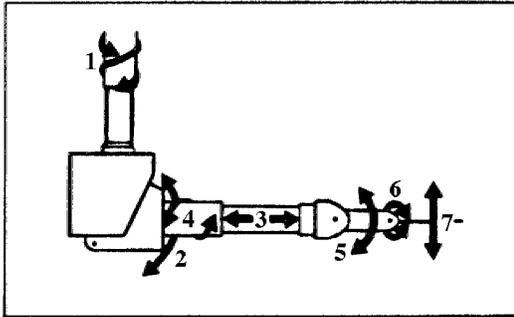
4.6.2 Manipulator Design

4.6.2.1 General purpose manipulators. General purpose manipulators (including master-slave and rectilinear arm manipulators) should be provided with the following capabilities

- a. A minimum of seven degrees of freedom of movement as illustrated in Figure 4.6.1, Degrees of freedom of movement for manipulator arm and wrist assembly.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.6.1. Degrees of freedom of movement for manipulator arm and wrist assembly.



- b. Ability to grasp and manipulate tools. The slave hands provided must be designed to produce the appropriate movement, grip, thrust, and torque required by the task.
- c. A bilateral drive system to reflect force to the technician's arm in a natural and meaningful way. The system must be completely reversible so that a force or movement of the output will give a corresponding force or movement of the input member (knob or handle).
- d. Optimal shape of the manipulator arm. The wrist joint and lower portion of the arm should be as small as possible to permit unobstructed vision by the technician as well as to permit remote manipulation of equipment in close quarters.

4.6.2.2 Rectilinear arm manipulators. Rectilinear arm manipulators should have the following capabilities:

- a. Grip force indication, visual and/or auditory.
- b. Horizontal movement to permit handling at any location in the "hot" area.
- c. Portable control console to "follow" the arm to various locations in the "hot" area.
- d. Provide positive stops to preclude danger to the objects being handled and/or "hot" area if one of the servo-loops should fail.

4.6.2.3 Power assist. For tasks involving gross positioning of loads heavier than 10 kg (22 lb), electrically or hydraulically powered manipulators with rate control should be provided (i.e., the operator's control output directly determines the rate of change of the machine output).

4.6.2.4 Master-slave manipulators. Master-slave manipulators should have the following functions and capabilities.

- a. To follow the operator's natural control and effector actions by maintaining the equivalent spatial orientation and position. Errors greater than 20° in the synchronous arrangement of slave jaws and master control handle are detrimental to operator performance.
- b. High mechanical efficiency, low inertia, and low friction.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.6.2.5 Electronic master-slave manipulators. Electronic master-slave manipulators should have the following functions and capabilities:

- a. Variable ratios of control-effector movement.
- b. Variable ratios of force reflection (kinesthetic feedback).
- c. Positive stops to preclude danger to the objects being handled and/or "hot" area if one of the servo-loops should fail.

4.6.2.6 Manipulator hands. Manipulator hands should permit a wide range of lifting, holding, and clamping capacities. Several illustrations of useful hand configurations for maintenance tasks are shown (See also Figure 4.6.2, Examples of manipulator hand configuration).

4.6.3 Feedback and Viewing Equipment

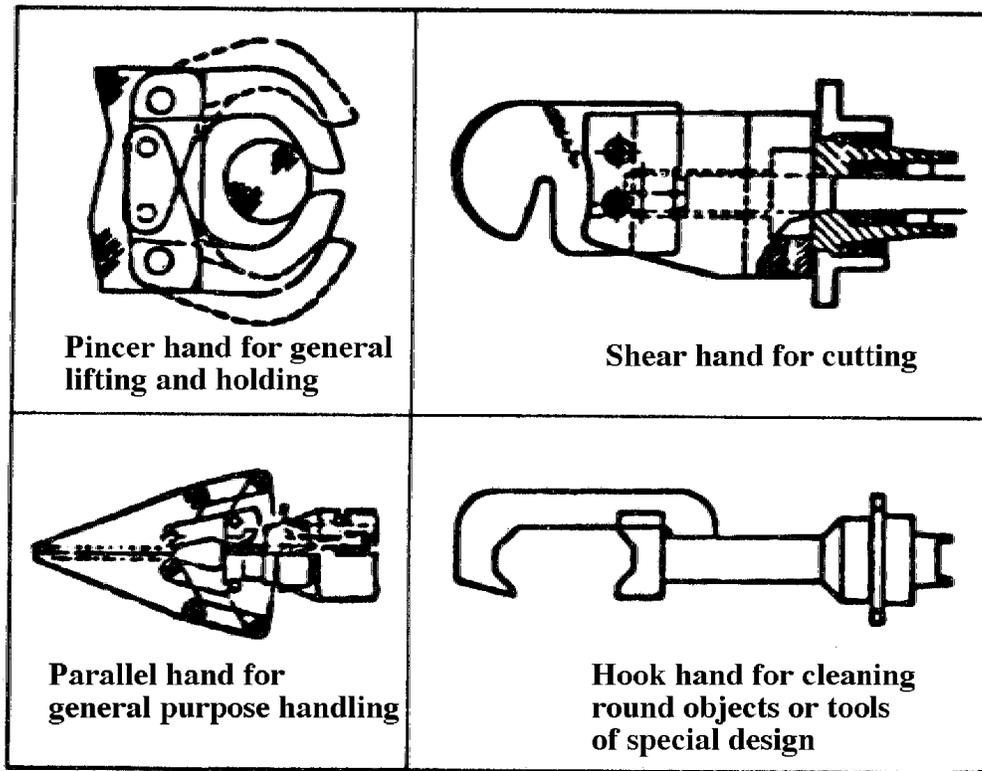
4.6.3.1 Kinesthetic and tactile feedback. Handling controls should be designed to provide kinesthetic and tactile feedback to the maintenance technician so that a sense of "feel" is provided as to the amount of torque or force being applied or the direction of movement being taken.

4.6.3.1.1 Shape of arm. Where possible, the arm on which the control handle is attached should have a shape similar to the manipulator arm to maximize the similarity of motions.

4.6.3.1.2 Measurement/feedback of torque and grip or thrust force. For precise measurement and feedback of torque, grip force, or thrust force, calibrated instruments on the control console should be provided. For example, a hand grip force display should be provided which indicates a force reflection over a range from a few ounces to several hundred pounds

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.6.2. Examples of manipulator hand configurations.



4.6.3.2 Information concerning spatial coordinates of workspace. A viewing system should be provided which gives the operator of a remote manipulator adequate information with respect to the three spatial coordinates of the workspace (i.e., X, Y, and Z).

4.6.3.3 Direct vision. A means of direct vision should be provided through shielding windows where possible. A means of achieving this is by using turntables designed to rotate the equipment so that any side can be shown to the maintenance technician. Direct vision is preferred because it provides little or no distortion of dimensions, clarity, and color discrimination.

4.6.3.4 Viewing angle. In order to avoid distortion, direct viewing of objects either near the viewing window or at line-of-sight angles greater than 60 degrees should be avoided.

4.6.3.5 Use of optical systems. Where direct vision is not possible or an adjunct to it is needed, an optical system should be provided such as binocular, or stereoscopic periscopes or microscopes where three-dimensional viewing is essential.

4.6.3.6 Use of closed circuit television. Where direct vision and optical systems are not possible, closed circuit television systems should be provided for visibility.

4.6.3.6.1 Camera placement. When closed circuit television is used to provide visual feedback for a remotely performed task, the camera should be placed so that the visual field is viewed from the normal line of sight.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.6.3.6.2 Use of two cameras for stereo vision. Two cameras oriented at right angles to one another with a separate monitoring screen for each may be substituted for stereo television; however, visibility is more dependent upon strong contrasts and shades than on stereoscopic effect.

4.6.3.6.3 Views from different angles and magnifications. Users should have the capability to manage TV camera angles and to zoom in where greater detail is required. Where applicable more than one camera and associated monitor may be used to provide different views of the worksite from different angles and different levels of magnification.

4.6.3.6.4 Use of color. Depending on the equipment and its setting, color enhances the sensation of depth and may convey important information to the user but, because of its greater resolution, black and white TV should be considered, particularly when resolution provided by the color TV system is insufficient.

4.6.3.7 Use of special windows. Special windows should be provided to shield maintenance technicians from radiation while providing maximum visibility. Liquid-filled windows must provide the following:

- a. Shielding effectiveness e.g. the same amount of shielding per unit surface area as afforded by the remainder of the biological shield.
- b. Nontoxicity of window materials in case of breakage.
- c. Stability of color and clarity (against both time and radiation).
- d. Optical efficiency e.g., height transmission of a large portion of the visible spectrum, minimum haze high refraction index, large angle of view through small window aperture.

4.6.3.7.1 Preserving contrast effect. In order to preserve the contrast effect which is important in discriminating detail, care should be taken to control factors such as haze in liquid windows, cleanliness of glass surfaces, and multiple surface reflections

4.6.3.7.2 Minimizing distortion. To minimize distortion, objects should not be viewed near the window or with an angle of incidence for the line of sight which is greater than 60° .

4.6.3.8 Lighting. Sufficient light should be provided for remote handling operations.

4.6.3.8.1 Auxiliary lighting. Auxiliary lighting should be provided for visually inaccessible locations in the equipment being handled. For example, lights should be provided on tools, test probes, and servicing adapters that are inserted into dark recesses of equipment

4.6.3.8.2 Achromatic lighting. To increase visibility, higher intensities of achromatic lighting is just as efficient as monochromatic lighting

4.6.3.8.3 Use of monochromatic lighting. Monochromatic light should be used where white light would actually interfere with observation, such as with very small components in which the parts would not be distinguishable under white light when viewing conditions are near threshold, when high magnification powers are required, or when the operator is required to view the work at high angles of incidence through refractive materials.

4.6.3.9 Use of symbol coding. If possible, symbol coding rather than color codes should be used when codes must be recognized by the maintenance technician both under conditions of direct viewing and

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

color television use. Symbol coding may not be applicable for very complex equipment. However, any adaptation of color codes to correct for distortion by color television will confuse the technician who is viewing the code directly. Therefore, another method of coding other than color should be used when both direct and television viewing are required.

4.6.3.10 Lettering. Letters, numbers, and important details which must be viewed by means of television should be light against a dark background. Glazed or reflecting surfaces should be avoided.

4.6.3.11 Stereo viewing. The two images produced by a stereoscopic periscope should not differ more than 2% in magnification or 0.50 prism diopter in vertical imbalance. Horizontal imbalance will not be greater than 0.50 prism diopter so as not to be fatiguing. Light transmittance of the two optical paths should be within 10% of each other.

4.6.4 Tools and support equipment. Tools and support equipment that are used in conjunction with remote handling equipment should be designed so that they are easily accessible to the manipulator hand and easily decontaminated.

4.7 Hand tools

Hand tools include only those which are commonly used in maintenance work for inspecting, adjusting, servicing, removing, or replacing components.

4.7.1 General Principles

4.7.1.1 General tool design. Tools should be designed for maximum simplicity, practicality, and universality.

4.7.1.2 Equipment design for minimal tool use. It is important to ensure that equipment is designed to be maintained (in order of priority)

- a. Without tools, where possible.
- b. With the minimum number of tools for the system.
- c. With the minimum number of tools for the maintenance task.
- d. With common hand tools, where possible.
- e. With specialized tools only when absolutely required.

4.7.1.3 Determining tools requirements. Using techniques such as task analysis, requirements for tools should be derived directly from the maintenance tasks to be performed and the design characteristics of the equipment involved. Tools requirements should be determined and validated early in system development by using them during developmental testing of the system/equipment to find duplications and omissions, and to determine if the equipment requires additional tools.

4.7.1.4 List of tools for maintenance task. Each equipment system should be accompanied by a comprehensive list of tools required for all maintenance tasks.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.7.1.5 Work packages containing necessary tools. A system should be established for preparing a work package containing all the tools necessary to do a job prior to its execution. For example, a list of necessary tools in the procedures to be used could be copied onto a form, reviewed by appropriate maintenance personnel, and then given to supply personnel who would take the forms and prepare work packages in time for maintainers to request these packages when the work begins.

4.7.1.6 Use commonly available tools. Where feasible, only those tools usually found in the maintenance technician's tool kit should be required for maintenance operations. Specialized uncommon tools should only be specified when they offer a significant advantage over the more commonly available tools.

4.7.1.7 Speed or power tools. Speed or power tools such as ratchets, speed screwdrivers, or power wrenches should be provided the technician when they are required because of torque demands or space limitations.

4.7.1.8 Skid-proof pliers and clamps. Holding tools such as pliers or clamps should be designed so that they are skid-proof and do not mar or scratch holding surfaces.

4.7.1.9 Adequate gripping surfaces. Adequate gripping surfaces should be provided on the handles of tools. Knurling, grooving, or shaping the handle to fit the hand are desirable.

4.7.1.10 Tool finish. In evaluating the finish to be applied to tools, consider that tools having a dull finish prevent reflected glare in areas of high illumination. However, dull-finished tools are often overlooked when closing assemblies, etc., causing loss of tools and possible damage to the equipment. The designer should therefore carefully consider the advantages and disadvantages of this type of finish in relation to the potential application of the tool.

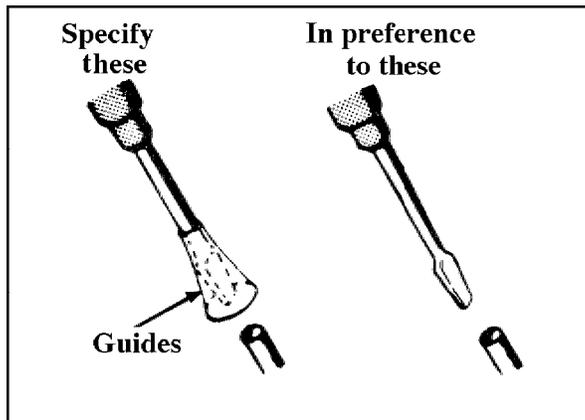
4.7.1.11 Insulated handles. Plastic, heat- or cold-resistant handles should be specified for tools used in extremely hot or cold climates. Use of metal handles is undesirable, particularly for cold climates and for electricians' tools.

4.7.2 Screwdrivers

4.7.2.1 Screwdriver guides. Screwdrivers for small-size adjustment screws should be provided with a funnel-like guide that will aid placement of the screwdriver on the adjustment point. (See also Figure 4.7.1, Screwdriver for small sized adjustments.)

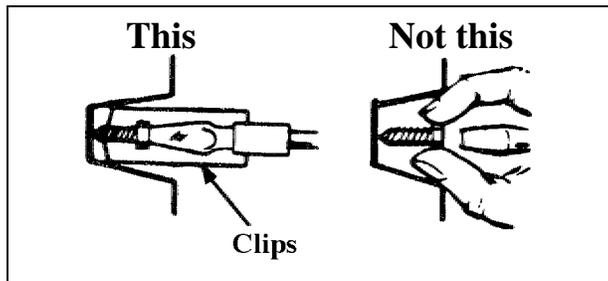
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.7.1. Screwdriver for small-sized adjustments.



4.7.2.2 Magnetized screwdrivers and screwdriver clips. Magnetized screwdrivers, if they will not adversely affect electronic circuits, should be provided to hold free screws that cannot be held easily with the fingers. If magnetized screwdrivers are not desirable, screwdrivers should have clips. Design the clip so that it can be slid up the screwdriver shaft when not in use. (See also Figure 4.7.2, Example of clip screwdriver)

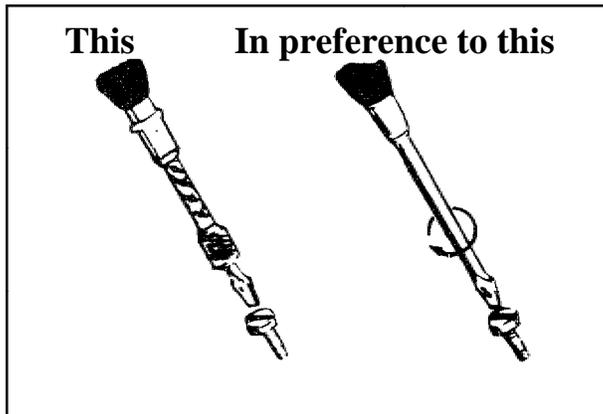
Figure 4.7.2. Example of clip screwdriver.



4.7.2.3 Push type screwdrivers. Push-type screwdrivers should be provided wherever screws must be rotated through many revolutions, provided the attendant resultant force on the equipment will not be harmful (See also Figure 4.7.3, Example of push type tool).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.7.3. Example of push-type tool.



4.7.2.4 Tool compatibility. Tools should be specified which are compatible with the design of the equipment on which they will be used as well as with the job to be performed. For example, a tool size should be specified which is consistent with the size of the prime equipment. Lever handles should be specified rather than screwdriver handles when high torque is to be applied, and tools should be provided which are consistent with working space available on the prime equipment.

4.7.2.5 Positive snap-locking action for connecting sockets. Positive snap-locking action should be used for connecting sockets to the various components of a socket set. Design them so they can be easily connected and disconnected.

4.7.2.6 Ratchet screwdrivers. Ratchet screwdrivers should be provided where torque requirements are low and space is limited. They require only one-handed operation and usually require less clearance.

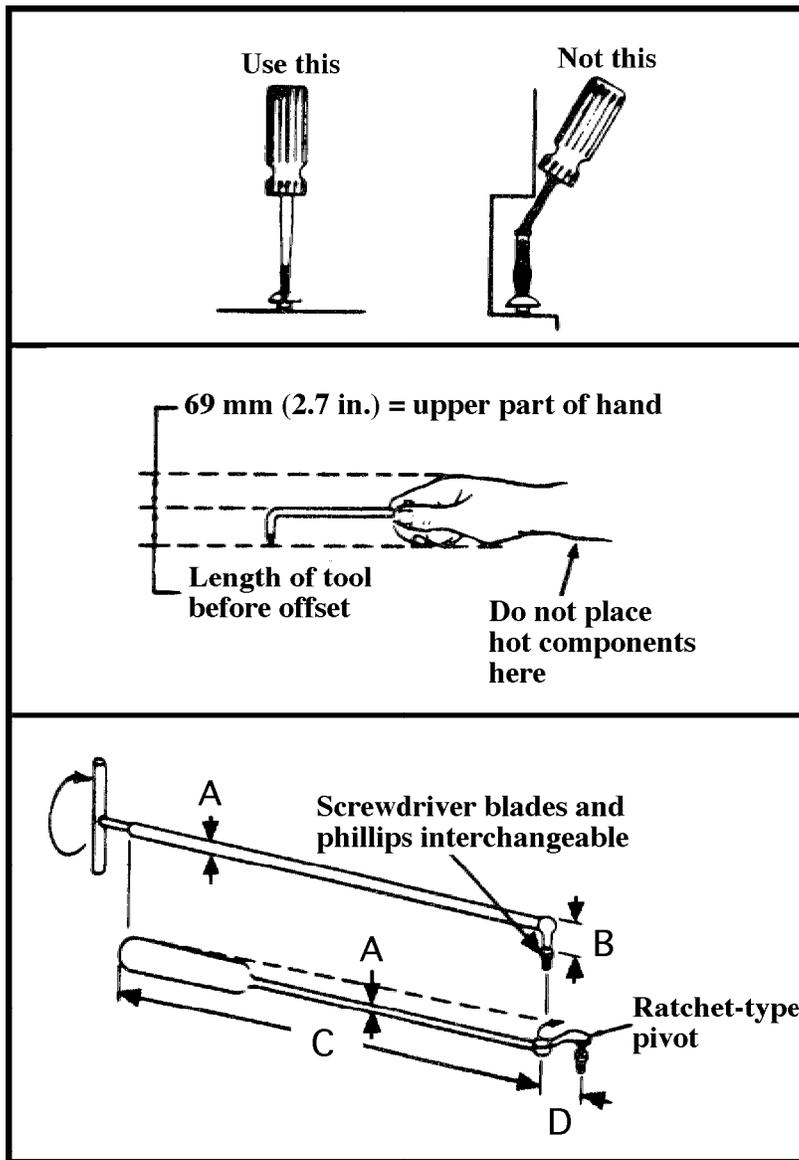
4.7.2.7 Offset screwdrivers. Equipment should be designed so that only straight type screwdrivers can be used. Offset screwdrivers are not satisfactory because there is a lack of normal force on the screw head slots and the slots become damaged easily. However, the use of offset screwdrivers reduces the amount of space required to turn a screw and because of space limitations may be the only solution. The overhead space requirement for offset tools and two special type offset tools for removing fasteners are illustrated below in Figure 4.7.4, Uses of straight and offset screwdrivers.

Offset screwdrivers should have the following dimensions:

- a. Shaft thickness: 6 mm (0.25 in.)
- b. Blade height: 19 mm (0.75 in.)
- c. Shaft length: 305 mm (12 in.)
- d. Pivot arm: 25 mm (1 in.)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.7.4. Uses of straight and off-set screwdrivers.



4.7.3 Other hand tools

4.7.3.1 Drills with floating chucks. Drills with floating chucks for drilling fastener holes for rivets should be used. These will insure that the hole is drilled at the proper right angle so that maximum fit tolerances are reached.

4.7.3.2 Spanner wrenches. Spanner wrenches should be designed to be operable from various angles to avoid obstructions in operations.

4.7.3.3 Templates for rigging, mounting links, arms, and rods. The technician should be provided with templates for making surface control adjustments (rigging) or for mounting links, arms, rods, or other

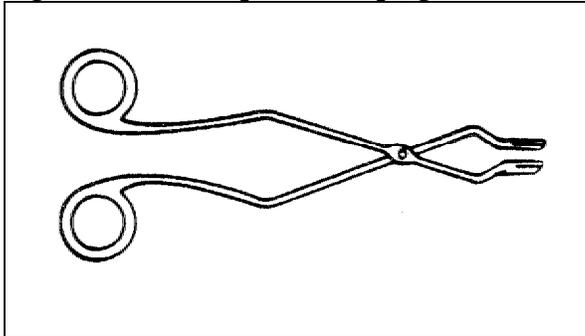
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

such parts on a flat surface. Markings should be provided on the templates to show the desired setting or placement of the control or part.

4.7.3.4 High-speed soldering devices. High-speed soldering devices should be provided to melt connections being serviced without damaging adjacent elements.

4.7.3.5 Clamping devices. Clamping devices should be provided to remove small, closely packed plug-in devices (See also Figure 4.7.5, Example of clamping device).

Figure 4.7.5. Example of clamping device.



4.7.3.6 Long-nosed hemostat-type pliers. Long-nosed hemostat-type pliers should be provided which can lock, hold their grip, and be used as heat sinks.

4.7.3.7 Printed circuit card extenders and card extractors. Printed circuit card extenders and card extractors should be available to the technician for use with computerized units.

4.7.4 Safety recommendations

4.7.4.1 Tool insulation. Adequate insulation should be provided on handles or other parts of tools which the technician is likely to touch while doing maintenance work near voltages in excess of 50 volts.

4.7.4.2 Spark resistant tools. Spark-resistant tools should be provided if they are to be used in areas where fire or explosion hazards are present.

4.7.4.3 Adequate storage. Adequate storage for tools should be provided so they cannot fall and cause personal injury or be easily misplaced or lost.

4.7.4.4 Sharp corners and edges. Sharp corners and edges on tool chests should be eliminated.

4.7.4.5 Tool chests easily moved. Tool chests which are too large to be easily handled by one person should have casters or a sufficient number of handles to facilitate moving. Handles should be located so the chest will be balanced when it is being moved.

4.8 Hand tool use in hot environments

4.8.1 Separate storage for hot tools. Storage areas should be provided for maintaining two separate sets of work tools to effectively cope with the special demands of hot and clean maintenance activities.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.8.2 Design of tools for contaminated areas.

4.8.2.1 Smooth surfaces. Tools that are to be used in contaminated areas should be designed with grasp surfaces that are smooth. Knurled knobs and porous boots which would be more prone to collect contaminated particles should be avoided.

4.8.2.1.1 Taping tool handles. Smooth surfaces should be taped to replace the grip facility provided by knurling. In addition when the job is completed, the tape can be removed along with any contamination.

4.8.2.2 Long handled tools. Where they do not hinder necessary manipulation, long- handled tools may be used to separate maintainers from high radiation equipment.

4.8.3 Decontamination station. A tool decontamination station should be established for the maintainer's use. It should be equipped with solvents, bags, and other aids to facilitate decontamination.

4.9 Stairs, ladders, and ramps.

Stairs, ladders, and ramps refers to structures which allow personnel to abruptly change elevations by more than 305 mm (12 in.) Stairs (stiles) and ramps may be used to allow for safe and easy passage over low objects (e.g., pipes, lines) in corridors and passageways.

4.9.1 General principles

4.9.1.1 Use of stairs, ladders, stair ladders, and ramps. Types of structures that allow personnel to change elevation and characteristics that should be considered in selecting them for use are:

- a. Stairs allow the fastest, safest, and easiest passage of personnel, especially when they are carrying loads.
- b. Stair ladders are preferred to ladders because they provide better footing and faster, safer passage. However, sure balance and fast movement require the use of both hands on the handrails. Carrying loads up stair ladders is also hazardous.
- c. Ladders are not desirable for frequent passage. They are comparatively unsafe, difficult to climb, and difficult to work from. Only loads which are strapped to personnel can be carried up ladders. Fixed ladders are preferable to semi-permanent or movable ladders; the former are more stable, less subject to clearance problems, and can be affixed with guardrails and other safety features. Portable ladders should be required and provided only for emergency functions or for use during infrequent maintenance tasks. Permanent ladders or maintenance stands are preferable.
- d. In general, ramps are of value only when rolling stock must be moved between different levels and this same space can be used for pedestrian traffic. Long ramps are undesirable except for self-propelled vehicles. Requirements for personnel to push or pull rolling stock up ramps should be carefully evaluated in terms of safety and human strength.

4.9.1.2 Stair, ladder and ramp layout. Layout and design of stairs, ladders., and ramps should consider:

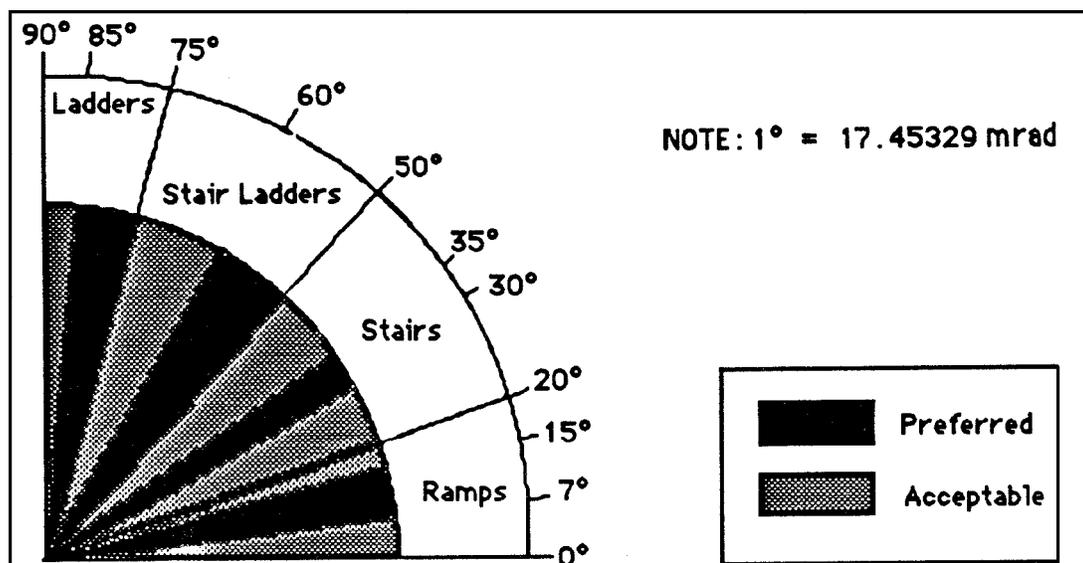
- a. Limitations in the amount of space and clearance available.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- b. Predictable environmental conditions that will affect the structure (particularly if it will become wet or covered with ice, snow, or mud).
- c. Type, direction, and frequency of traffic over the structure.
- d. Relative efficiency of alternate traffic patterns.
- e. Loads or other encumbrances to be carried by personnel over the structures.
- f. Size and weight of other equipment that may have to be moved over the route.
- g. Need for decontamination and clean up.

4.9.1.3 Angles of incline for stairs, ladders, and ramps. The type of structure chosen to be used should be based on the angle of the structure's inclination in relation to the available space and structural constraints. Figure 4.9.1, Preferred and critical angles for ladders, stair ladders, stairs, and ramps, shows the preferred and critical angles of incline suitable for these structures.

Figure 4.9.1. Preferred and critical angles for ladders, stair ladders, stairs, and ramps.



Note: Where wheelchair accessibility is a consideration, slope should not exceed 4.6°, with 3.5° as the preferred maximum, and the maximum rise being 762 mm (30 in.). Where space limitations prohibit shallower rises, the slope may go up to 5.7° for a maximum rise of any run of 152 mm (6 in.) or up to 7° for a maximum rise of 76 mm (3 in.).

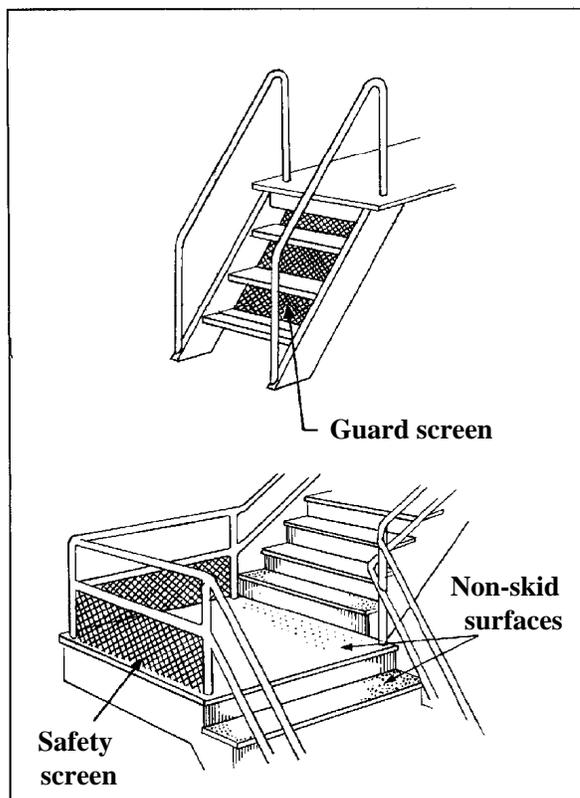
4.9.1.4 General design criteria for stairs, ladders, and ramps. Stairs, ladders, and ramps should be:

- a. Designed, installed, or provided to affect the most immediate and efficient access to and between work places and areas.
- b. Constructed of materials which are lightweight, nonconductive, splinter-proof, waterproof, weatherproof, humidity-resistant, and resistant to chemical action.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Designed to withstand the combined weights and strengths of the largest number of personnel likely to be on them at one time, multiplied by a safety factor of at least two. 97.5 kg (215 lb) per person should be used to calculate weight.
- d. Provided with non-skid surfaces on all areas where personnel are expected to step, walk, or stand (See Figure 4.9.2, Recommendations for fixed and portable ladders).
- e. Free of obstruction, edges, notches, or burrs which could injure personnel or damage hoses or cables.
- f. Designed to be de-iced, when necessary, by using hot water or steam.
- g. Adequately lighted.
- h. Adequately marked against hazards in their use, e.g., against low overhead, possible shock.
- i. Provided with a safety screen behind open stair designs and at landings (See also Figure 4.9.2, Recommendations for fixed and portable ladders).

Figure 4.9.2. Examples of use of safety screens behind open stairs and landings.



4.9.2 Recommendations for fixed and portable ladders.

4.9.2.1 Safety devices. Safety devices should be provided on either fixed or portable ladders whenever length, use, or operating conditions require. For instance, pole lashing devices should be provided for

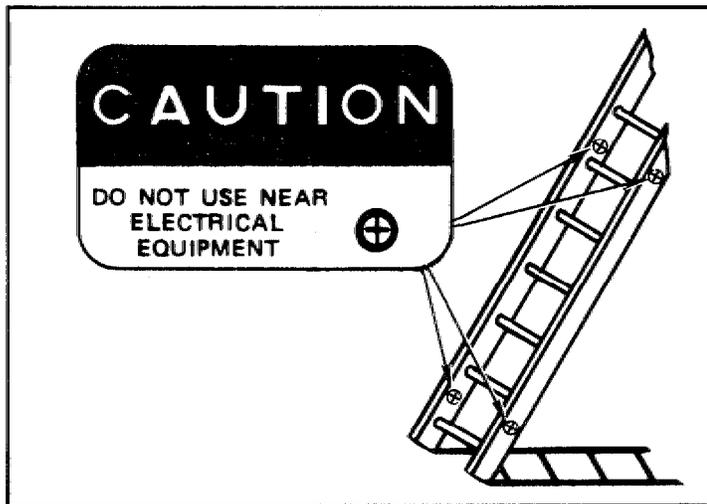
DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

ladders to be used against poles, or carrier rails and safety belts should be provided for long ladders to be used in adverse weather or under emergency conditions.

4.9.2.2 Kick plates. Kick plates should be installed behind ladders for special applications where feet may damage the surface of the equipment.

4.9.2.3 Signs and decals. Metal ladders should be marked with signs or decals warning against the danger of shock. These should be placed inside the stingers, on both sides, and 3 feet from both ends and read: “**CAUTION. Do not use or store near electrical equipment.**” (See also Figure 4.9.3, Example of hazard marking on ladder)

Figure 4.9.3. Example of hazard marking on ladder.



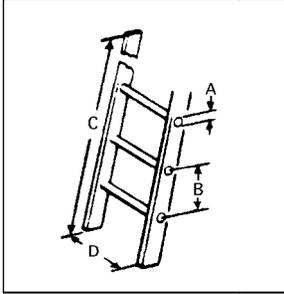
4.9.3 Design of portable ladder

4.9.3.1 Rung ladders. Portable rung ladders should have the following dimensions (keyed to Figure 4.9.4, Rung ladder dimensions)

	<u>Minimum</u>	<u>Maximum</u>	<u>Preferred</u>
a. Rung diameter:			
Wood	29 mm (1.3 in.)	38 mm (1.5 in.)	36 mm (1.4 in.)
Protected metal	19 mm (0.75 in.)	38 mm (1.5 in.)	36 mm (1.4 in.)
Metal that may rust	25 mm (1.0 in.)	38 mm (1.5 in.)	36 mm (1.4 in.)
b. Rung spacing:	229 mm (9 in.)	406 mm (16 in.)	279 - 305 mm (11 - 12 in.)
c. Maximum ladder length:			
Single section ladders		9.14 m (30 ft)	
Two-section, metal ladders		14.63 m (48 ft)	
Two-section, wood ladders		18.28 m (60 ft)	

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001d. **Minimum** width between side rails:

Metal ladders	305 mm	(12 in.)
Wood ladders Up to 10 ft. long	292 mm	(11.5 in.)
Add 6 mm (.25 in.) for each added	610 mm	(2 ft) of length

Figure 4.9.4. Portable rung ladder dimensions.

4.9.3.2 Step ladders. Step ladders should have the following dimensions (keyed to Figure 4.9.5, Step ladder dimensions):

a. Spread: 89 mm (3.5 in.) per foot length of front section plus 51 mm (2 in.) per 0.30 m (1 ft) length of back section

b. Tread width:

<u>Min</u>	<u>Preferred</u>
76 mm (3 in.)	76 - 101 mm (3 - 4 in.)

c. Step spacing: 223 mm (9 in.) 279 - 305 mm (11 - 12 in.)

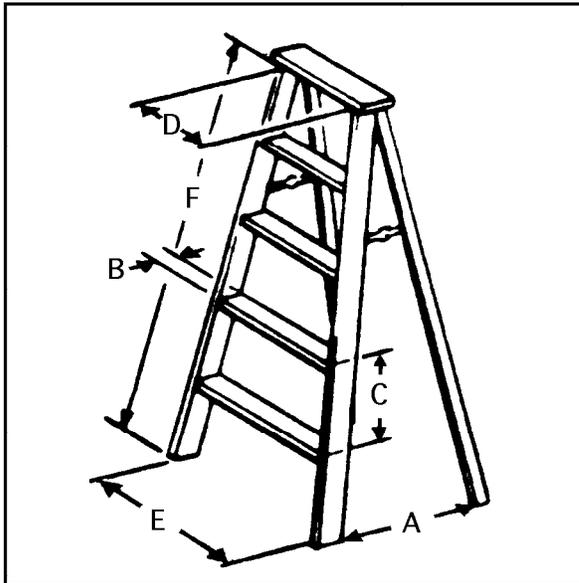
d. **Minimum** width between siderails at top step:

Metal ladders	279 mm (12 in.)
Wood ladders	290 mm (11.4 in.) of D.

e. **Maximum** length of ladder: 6.10 m (20 ft)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.9.5 Step-ladder dimensions.



4.9.3.3 Portable ladder feet. Ladders should be provided with rubber-cleated, pivoted feet for use in non-freezing weather, and steel cleats for use in ice or snow.

4.9.3.4 Hinges and locks. Permanent hinges and locks should be used in preference to bolts and nuts for assembly of two-section extension ladders.

4.9.3.5 Metal spreader or locking device. Step-ladders should be equipped with a metal spreader or locking device of sufficient size and strength to securely hold the front and back sections in the open position.

4.9.3.6 Maximum length for portable wood ladders. The maximum length for portable wood ladders should be: step-ladders, 6.10 m (20 ft); single straight ladders, 9.14 m (30 ft); two section extension ladders, 18.29 m (60 ft); sectional ladders, 18.29 m (60 ft); trestle ladders, 6.10 m (20 ft); platform step-ladders, 6.10 m (20 ft); painter's step-ladders 3.66 m (12 ft); and mason's ladders 12.19 m (40 ft).

4.9.3.7 Maximum length for portable metal ladders. The maximum length for portable metal ladders should be single straight ladders, 9.14 m (30 ft); two section extension ladders, 14.63 (48 ft); extension ladders with more than two sections, 18.29 (60 ft); step-ladders 6.10 m (20 ft); trestle ladders, 6.10 m (20 ft); and platform step-ladders, 6.10 m (20 ft).

4.9.3.8 Non self-supporting ladders. Non self-supporting ladders should be erected on a sound base at a 4-1 pitch and placed to prevent slipping.

4.9.3.9 Ladder maintenance. Ladders should be maintained so as to be in good condition and defective ladders should be withdrawn from service.

4.9.3.9.1 Coating wooden ladders. Wooden ladders should be kept coated with a suitable protective material.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.9.3.9.2 Roof access. Although not the preferred means of access, when used to gain roof access the top of the ladder should extend at least 0.91 m (3 ft) above the point of contact with the roof.

4.10 Platforms, catwalks, and shelters

Platforms refer to supports which are used to provide maintenance technicians with support at a tolerable working distance to equipment.

Catwalks refer to a walkway used to provide access and to allow movement by maintainers.

Shelters are used to provide enclosure and protection of maintenance technicians and equipment during maintenance tasks.

4.10.1 General principles

4.10.1.1 Mobility requirements. Platforms, catwalks, and shelters should be permanently installed whenever possible. Where they must be mobile, platforms and shelters should be:

- a. Lightweight enough for no more than two people to handle, erect, and install.
- b. Collapsible or adjustable for easy handling and transporting.
- c. Provided with self-locking devices for all attachments, adjustments, and collapsible supports.
- d. Provided with wheels, as necessary, that should:
 - Have wheel locks or brakes to insure stability.
 - Be large enough to allow easy passage over ridges up to 19.0 mm (0.75 in.) high or higher.
 - Provide firm grip and adequate support on slippery surfaces, snow, ice, and sand.

4.10.1.2 Stability requirements. Platforms and shelters should be

- a. Provided with low centers of gravity, wide wheel bases, anchors, and/or outriggers as needed to achieve stability.
- b. Properly balanced and supported to allow using without tipping when the weight of personnel and/or components is applied to any one side.

4.10.1.3 Fixture requirements. Where practical and feasible, platforms and shelters should have:

- a. Electrical outlets and fixtures to provide adequate lighting and facilitate use of test equipment and powered tools.
- b. Shelves or other places for resting test equipment, tools, or components at a convenient operating or working level.
- c. Hooks, eyes, clip fasteners, supports, etc. to facilitate the support and connection of associated wiring, hoses, block-and-tackle arrangements, etc.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- d. Storage space, cable winders, supports, clamps, etc. to provide storage for associated manuals, slings, special tools, extension cables, etc.

4.10.1.4 Size and configuration requirements. Platforms and shelters should provide:

- a. Easy passage of personnel when access doors, cowl flaps, etc. are open.
- b. Adequate work space and work clearances for the maximum number of personnel and required range of tasks.
- c. Easy access to all equipment, mounts, and features integrally related to the maintenance operations performed using the platform; e.g., to an engine and all its associated parts, accessories, and points of connection.
- d. Safe and easy handling in these operations of all related:
- Components that are likely to be removed.
 - Spare parts, tools, etc. that must be handled.
 - Slings, hoses, lines, and other supports to be handled.
 - Cowls, panels, or other major items that must be handled within the shelter or from the platform or stand.

4.10.1.5 Capacity. The capacity of platforms, catwalks, and shelters should exceed the heaviest combination of men and equipment to be supported at any one time. Platforms and catwalks should be proof-tested by a qualified inspector to twice the rated capacity at least annually IAW DOE-STD-1090-99, 4.1.d.4.

4.10.1.5.1 Capacity displayed. The capacity of platforms and catwalks should be displayed in pounds with high visibility labels on platforms and catwalks

4.10.2 Platforms

4.10.2.1 Minimum workspace. Platforms should provide a minimum of 0.56 sq. m (6 sq. ft) of workspace.

4.10.2.2 Both hands free for work. The platform design should allow the technician to have both hands free for work.

4.10.2.3 Continuing work surface. Platforms should provide a continuing work surface around or between related portions of the work area, e.g., the engine.

4.10.2.4 Weight capacity. The platform should be designed to have a capacity in excess of the heaviest combination of persons and/or equipment to be supported at any one time. Use 97.5 kg (215 lb) per person to calculate weight. A minimal capacity of one ton is recommended.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.10.2.5 Conform to work surface. The platform should conform closely to the work surface.

- a. General conformation should be within 51 mm (2 in.)
- b. Gaps greater than 152 mm (6 in.) are normally objectionable.
- c. Contact plates, cushions, bumpers, or pads should be provided as necessary to protect equipment surfaces.

4.10.2.6 Open metal grating. The surfaces of exterior platforms and work areas should be constructed of open metal grating. When this is impractical (for example, when small items might fall through the grating or electrical shock might result) non-skid materials should be used

4.10.3 Catwalks

Catwalks should have non-skid surfaces and handrails, midrails and a toeboard (or a screen) on all sides conforming to the dimensions shown in Section 4.10.5, Guardrails and handrails. A model catwalk with recommended minimum width is shown in Figure 4.10.1, Example of a catwalk.

4.10.4 Shelters

4.10.4.1 Time to install and enclose. Time to install and enclose the shelter should be minimal and should not exceed one hour.

4.10.4.2 Enclosure and protection. Maximum practical enclosure and protection should be provided in terms of the environment in which the shelter is to be used.

4.10.4.3 Ventilation and environmental control. Ventilation and environmental control should be within tolerable limits, considering the type of clothing to be worn

4.10.4.4 Side by side use. Shelters should be designed so that they can be used side by side where appropriate.

4.10.4.5 Covered openings. Covered openings should be provided as necessary to facilitate removal of major components such as complete engines.

4.10.4.6 Compatibility with support equipment. Shelters should be compatible with, provide openings for, and allow employment of associated support equipment such as cranes, stands, slings, etc.

4.10.4.7 Non-interference with related maintenance. Shelter design should not interfere with operations essential to related maintenance.

4.10.5 Guardrails and handrails.

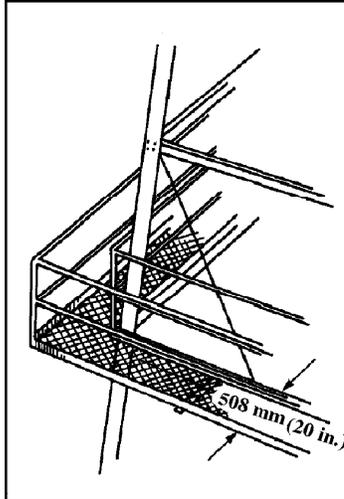
4.10.5.1 Provision of guardrails. Guardrails should be provided for:

- a. Stationary platforms which should also have a midrail and screening or a toeboard
- b. Mobile platforms with a top step height equal to or exceeding 1.2 m (4 ft.) to 3.0 m (10 ft.).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Mobile platforms over 3.0 m (10 ft.) height should have guardrails with a midrail and with toeboards (or screening or lattice work) provided on the exposed sides and on the ends of the platform

Figure 4.10.1. Example of a catwalk.



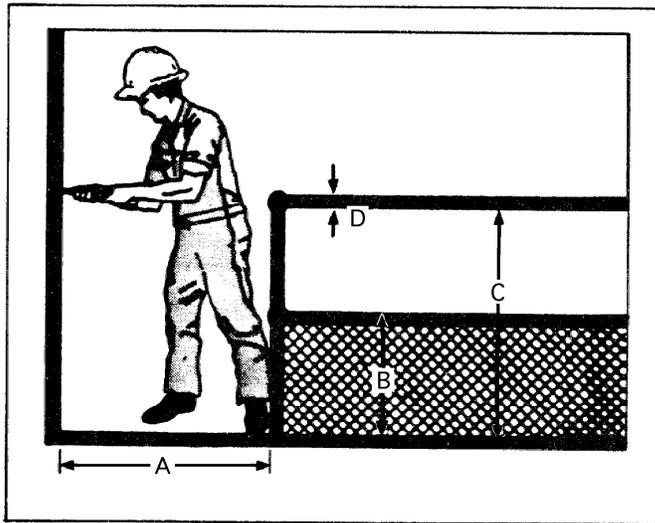
4.10.5.2 Guardrail dimensions. Guardrails should have the dimensions specified in Figure 4.10.2, Critical dimensions for guardrails.

- a. Width of clear space for access: 610 mm (24 in.)
- b. Height of midrail: 533 mm (21 in.)
- c. Height of upper rail: 1067 mm (42 in.) minimum - fixed platform
965 - 1125 mm (39 - 45 in.) - mobile platform
- d. Thickness of guardrail: 19 mm - 76 mm (0.75 in.-3.0 in.)
- e. (Not shown) Toeboard or screen height: 76 mm (3 in.) minimum

4.10.5.3 Hydraulically -operated boom platforms. Hydraulically-operated boom platforms other than buckets or baskets should include a guardrail system with the top rail 990-1143 mm (39-45 in.), and a midway rail and toeboards at least 102 mm (4 in.) high on all sides. (The toeboards may be omitted at the access opening.)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.10.2. Critical dimensions for guardrails.



4.10.6 Hand holds. Hand holds should be furnished where needed.

4.11 Hatches.

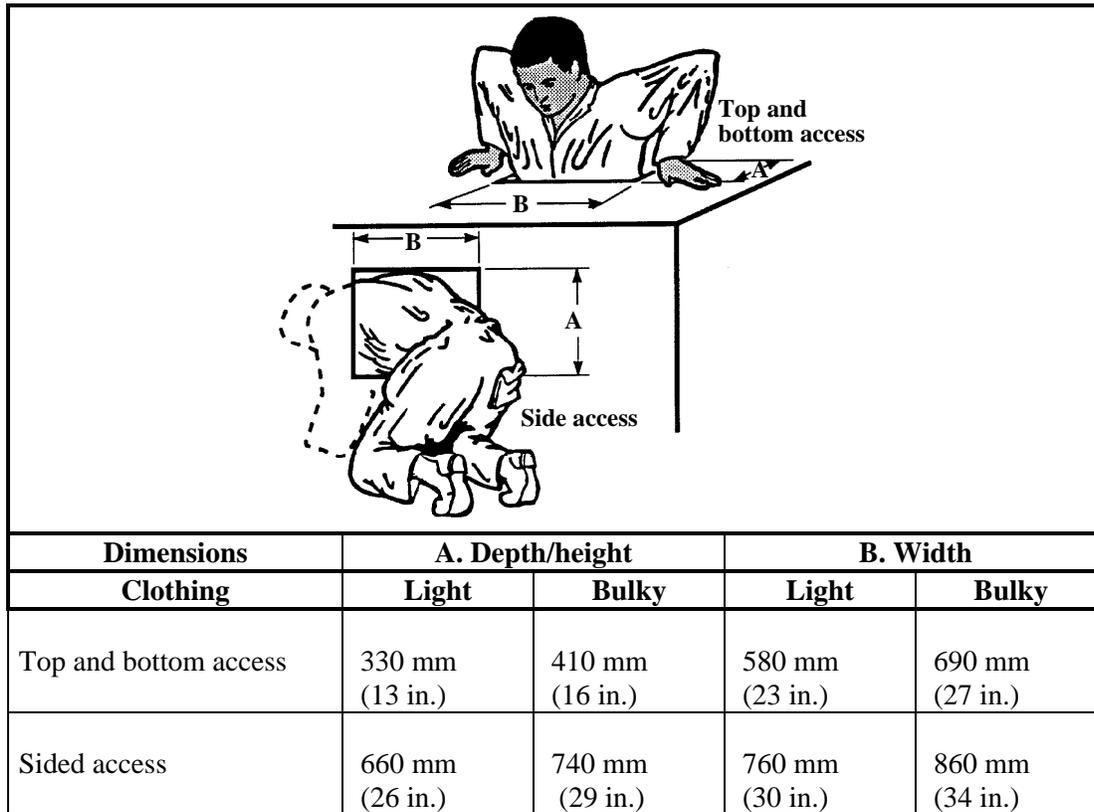
4.11.1 Configuration. Wall hatches should be flush with the floor where structural considerations will permit this arrangement. Hatches should open with a single motion of the hand or foot.

4.11.2 Force requirements. When a handle is used for unlocking a hatch, the unlocking force required should not exceed 90 N (20lbf). Hatches placed in the overhead position should require no more than 220 N (50lbf) for opening and closing; hatches should be operable by a suitable equipped and clothed user with 5th percentile arm and hand strength. The force of gravity should be used, for ease of opening, where possible.

4.11.3 Whole-body access. Dimensions for rectangular access openings for body passage should not be less than those dimensions shown in Figure 4.11.1, Whole-body access opening. Minimum diameter for circular hatches should be 760 mm (30 in.). These dimensions should be adjusted to accommodate personnel wearing bulky clothing or protective suits. Where personnel may carry equipment through the hatch, allowances should be made for clearance of the equipment and arm and shoulders in the position required to hold the equipment. Where rescue personnel may be required because of environmental hazards (e.g., toxic fumes) within the work place, larger access openings for two-person ingress and egress may be necessary. Where “step down” through a top access exceeds 690 mm (27 in.), appropriate foot rests or steps should be provided.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

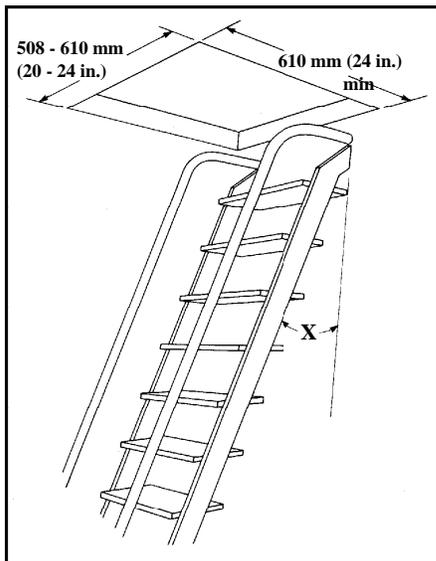
Figure 4.11.1 Whole body access opening



4.11.4 Floor mounted hatches. Floor-mounted hatches should be deep enough to accommodate personnel wearing encumbering clothing and equipment with the depth of the hatch depending on the angle, "X", of the ladder leading to the hatch. In general, the greater the angle X, the greater hatch depth should be. This is summarized by the rule of thumb equation hatch depth should equal 610 mm (24 in.) or $1930 (\tan X) \text{ mm}$ [$76 (\tan X) \text{ in.}$] whichever is greater.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 4.11.2. Floor-mounted hatch.



4.12 Communication equipment and procedures

4.12.1 Paging and announcing system design guidance.

4.12.1.1 Range of coverage. Paging and announcing systems used for maintenance personnel should have sufficient coverage so that members of the work force can be alerted reliably and without excessive attempts under all plant conditions.

4.12.1.2 Placement of loudspeakers. When loudspeakers are used, coverage should be provided for all areas where the work force may have to be reached. Speakers should be placed with a space so that their number, location, and amplitudes provide an adequate signal to all relevant workers therein. Generally, an articulation index (AI) of 0.7 or greater is recommended to accommodate the range of workers and conditions including those which could involve stressful conditions; however some maintenance applications involving only skilled workers and limited time stress may only require an AI of 0.5 or higher (See also Section 4.12.6.4, Intelligibility tests, and related subsections of this document).

4.12.1.3 Use of alternative communication systems. Except under limited conditions mentioned in 4.11.1.2, when an AI of 0.7 is not feasible, such as in particularly noisy areas, alternative communication provisions should be provided.

4.12.1.4 Echoes. To reduce echoes in confined spaces where reducing sound reflection is not practical, many low powered speakers should be used instead of a few high powered ones. Maximum speaker range (and distances between speakers) in these reverberant spaces should not exceed 15.24 m (50 ft.).

4.12.1.5 Zone paging systems. Zone paging systems in which the site is divided into several zones and the page is only broadcast into the zone(s) in which the maintainer is most likely to be found may be used to reduce the number of pages heard in any single location with reducing breadth of coverage; however, zones must be selected to make contact with maintainers being paged highly likely. If the zones cannot be defined so as to significantly reduce the number of pages within a zone while assuring a high probability of contacting parties of interest, then the zone system should not be used.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

4.12.1.6 Personal page devices. To avoid excessive use of the public address system and to reach maintainers outside of plant locations covered by the public address system, personal paging devices suitable for high noise and remote areas should be provided to mobile key personnel.

4.12.1.7 Page station locations and accessibility. Page stations at which personnel may initiate pages should be located so that time required for access by maintenance personnel does not generally exceed 30 seconds and so that the sound environment does not introduce excessive noise and feedback. Sound shielding should be provided when ambient noise exceeds 90 dB.

4.12.1.7.1 Speaker location in relation to page stations. Speakers should be located and oriented to avoid feeding into microphone; very close speakers should be muted when the microphone is used.

4.12.1.7.1 Telephone access to the paging system. In addition to dedicated paging stations for making announcements, telephone access to the paging system through dialing an assigned number may be provided.

4.12.1.8 Restricted access to paging systems. Design features or administrative controls such as magnetic card access or a record keeping feature that will identify the originating station should be provided to limit or trace unauthorized or excessive paging.

4.12.2 Two way communication systems

4.12.2.1 Capacity requirements for page party systems. For page party systems which the maintainer may use to make public address announcements as well as to carry on point-to-point conversations, generally a minimum of 5 channels should be provided to avoid excessive waiting for a free channel.

4.12.2.2 Dedicated lines. Dedicated lines for frequent or lengthy maintenance communications should be provided. In cases where extended task may constitute the only communications needed from a particular location or where these tasks are infrequent, sound-powered phone jacks may be installed in lieu of page-party or regular telephone stations to avoid congestion on those systems.

4.12.2.3 Locations for telephones and page party stations. Telephones and page party stations should be located so that time and effort required for access by maintenance personnel is not excessive and so that stations are in areas of relative quiet. A 30 second reach time is desirable for a public address page and 60 seconds should be the maximum time required.

4.12.2.3.1 Use of Hear-Here and telephone booths. Where stations must be located in noisy areas, sound barriers such as Hear-Here booths should be provided. In very noisy areas, full-length, acoustically designed, fully enclosed telephone booths should be used.

4.12.4 Communications systems for use with protective suits. Workers enclosed in protective suits should be provided with auditory communication capabilities. Pairs of worker in bubble suits may use special headsets and voice actuated boom microphones for short range communication. Specially designed radio systems may be used for longer range communication.

4.12.5 Adapting communication practices to user capabilities

4.12.5.1 Protecting and monitoring maintainers. Noisy areas, above 90 dB(A) for safety and above 85 dB(A) where speech intelligibility is also a factor, should be posted as "hearing protection required,"

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

maintainers should be trained to use hearing protection devices in these areas, and maintainers should be given annual audiometric tests to detect hearing loss.

4.12.5.1.1 Use of earplugs. In addition to retarding hearing loss caused by noise exposure, earplugs and over-the ear protective devices generally improve intelligibility in noisy environments of greater than 85 dB(A). Signal amplitudes can also be increased slightly beyond otherwise annoying levels if all workers are wearing protective devices.

4.12.5.2 Use of formal communications procedures. Communications training should be provided as a method of improving efficiency and reliability of communications. For example, using familiar vocabularies and phrases familiar to both parties can decrease the required signal-to-noise ratio 10 to 15 dB below that needed to convey unfamiliar terms.

4.12.6 Communication system reliability and maintenance.

4.12.6.1 Choosing communications systems for reliability. Communications systems should be chosen for reliable operation in the settings in which they will be used.

4.12.6.2 Back-up systems. Back up power supplies and temporary or back up communication systems should be considered for providing backup communication when the primary system fails. Their use should be a part of administrative procedures covering communication in maintenance activities.

4.12.6.3 Periodic testing programs. Communication systems should have design features that support testing for operability such as battery checks and insulation resistance checks and “power available” lights to loudspeakers. Administrative procedures should provide for periodic system testing.

4.12.6.4 Intelligibility tests. For activities involving difficult but critical communications, the system should be tested for speech intelligibility. Situations requiring such testing, the actual conduct of such tests, and the criteria for successful completion should be specified in applicable administrative procedures.

4.12.6.4.1 Methods for assessing speech intelligibility. When information concerning the speech intelligibility of a system is required, one or more of the three following recommended methods should be used with the appropriate selection being dependent upon the requirements of the test:

- a. The ANSI standard method of measurement of phonetically-balanced (PB) monosyllabic word intelligibility, (ANSI S3.2) should be used when a high degree of test sensitivity and accuracy is required.
- b. The modified rhyme test (MRT) may be used if the test requirements are not as stringent or if time and training do not permit the use of the ANSI method.
- c. The articulation index (AI) calculations should be used for estimations, comparisons and predictions of system intelligibility based on ANSI S3.5

4.12.6.4.2 Intelligibility criteria. The intelligibility criteria shown in Table 4.12.1, Intelligibility criteria for voice communication systems, should be used for voice communication. The efficiency of communications needed and the function of information to be transmitted should determine which of the three communication requirements in Table 4.12.1 should be used.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001**Table 4.12.1. Intelligibility criteria for voice communication systems.**

Communication requirement	Score*		
	PB	MRT	AI
High intelligibility; separate syllables understood	90%	97%	0.7
Acceptable intelligibility for some conditions and tasks; about 98% of sentences correctly heard; single digits understood	75%	91%	0.5

* PB - phonetically balanced, MRT - modified rhyme test, AI - articulation index

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

INTENTIONALLY BLANK

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

5.0 MAINTENANCE AIDS

Maintenance aids, as used in these guidelines, refers to informational sources or tools such as procedures, manuals, instructions, and job aids (e.g., flow diagrams, schematics, drawings, decision trees, used by the maintenance technician to perform his/her job.

5.1 General guidelines

5.1.1 Use of procedures. To avoid trial-and-error performance by technicians, each maintenance operation should be covered by a procedure(s) prepared and tested during the development of the system.

5.1.2 Redundancy. Information contained in procedures, manuals, instructions, and job aids should not be excessively redundant between the different maintenance aids used by the maintainer or with information the technician already possesses.

5.1.3 Compatibility with personnel capabilities and environmental conditions. Maintenance information should be compatible with the capabilities and limitations of the personnel which will be using it and with the anticipated environmental conditions, equipment characteristics, and task requirements.

5.1.4 Safety factors. Maintenance instruction should not require the technician to work near dangerous voltages or delicate components. Procedures, which require work to be performed in areas of contamination, should always specify the protective equipment and measures necessary to work safely in this environment.

5.1.5 Maintenance or test supports, rests or stands. Maintenance or test supports, rests or stands which may be used to hold technical orders, manuals, or procedures should be provided when required. When permitted by design requirements, such rests or stands should be part of the basic unit, rack, or console chassis.

5.1.6 Size and binding. Conditions under which procedures and technical manuals may be used include lack of laydown space, heat, and humidity; consequently the procedures should be sized and bound accordingly. If only certain pages need to be taken to a site, the technical manual may be bound in a loose-leaf binder so that the appropriate pages can be removed. If the pages are to remain in the manual binder, then they should lie flat by themselves when the manual is open.

5.1.7 Preparation and review of maintenance aids

5.1.7.1 Aids based on systematic analysis of tasks. Maintenance aids should be based on a systematic analysis of the tasks which are required in the performance of the maintenance activity.

5.1.7.2 Personnel preparing and reviewing aids. Maintenance aids should be prepared and/or reviewed by personnel who are knowledgeable in techniques of instructional preparation and the technical subject covered by the information.

5.1.7.3 Verification. The procedure should be evaluated or “verified” to confirm that it is written correctly according to the guidelines listed below for procedure presentation and format and to ensure its technical accuracy in accordance with plant specific documents and standards.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

5.1.7.4 Validation. Maintenance information should be validated by means of field tests to ensure clarity, comprehensives, and effectiveness.

5.1.8 Revising maintenance aids. Maintenance aids should be kept current with equipment. Whenever new equipment or modifications to equipment are introduced, old maintenance information should be revised to reflect these changes.

5.1.9 Vendor development of technical manuals. Users should specify what they want in their equipment technical manuals just as they specify what they want for their equipment. The vendor should assure that development of technical manuals is incorporated into the equipment design process and that they are based on a systematic analysis of user needs and that they are properly validated.

5.1.10 Vendor manual revisions. When making a revision, a vendor should update an entire section rather than send addenda pages that require turning back and forth and that can be easily lost. The user should ensure that vendor manual revisions are received from the vendor and that they are properly incorporated into maintenance procedures. When entering revisions, utilities should remove all old materials to avoid confusion and should ensure that copies are distributed to the proper people.

5.2 Maintenance procedures.

5.2.1 Recommended features. Some of the more important features that should be incorporated into maintenance procedures are

- a. Maintenance procedures should be as brief as possible without sacrificing necessary information. They should contain only job-relevant information.
- b. Procedures should be as self-contained as possible. The content and structure of procedures should minimize the need for consulting other references.
- c. Instructions should be prepared specifically for each organizational level (i.e., field, shop, factory) of maintenance and each skill level of maintenance technician required to perform the work rather than for all levels being combined.
- d. Procedures should provide unambiguous instructions.
- e. Procedures should have nomenclature that is used on the equipment.
- f. Required tolerances should be realistic for the level of maintenance being performed (i.e., field tolerances, shop or factory tolerances, new part tolerances, replacement part tolerances, in-service tolerances).
- g. Procedures should be easy for the technician to follow. Ideas and words should be as simple to comprehend as possible. Procedures sometimes can be simplified by designing test equipment to do some or all of the programming or sequential operations.
- h. Procedures should list tagging and switching instructions in the initial portions of the procedures.
- i. The number of decisions required to be made by the technician should be kept as few as reasonable and these should be as straightforward as possible.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- j. Exact, step-by-step procedures should be used (compared to narratives). This form will allow inexperienced technicians to learn the procedure easily.
- k. Each procedure, if necessary, should explain how to start up and shut down the equipment.
- l. Systematic troubleshooting procedures should always be provided for the technician. Failure to do this may result in the technician following inefficient or even dangerous methods.
- m. Pages should be numbered "- of -" for recognition of missing pages of a procedure.
- n. All requirements for completing the procedure including personnel, reference documents (e.g., specifications, drawings, and where necessary, other procedures), tools, parts, materials, and safety precautions pertaining to use of a procedure should be listed in the initial portions of the procedure.

5.2.2 Sequence of presenting information. Procedural information in technical manuals and maintenance procedure should be presented in the following sequence:

- a. Title page
- b. Table of contents
- c. Purpose and scope
- d. References
- e. Requirements- tools, test equipment, materials, and personnel
- f. Precautions and limitations
- g. Main body
- h. Follow-on maintenance
- i. Records
- j. Attachments

5.2.2.1 Title page. The title page should contain the following identifying information:

- a. Title (Should indicate applicable equipment and type operations performed)
- b. Revision date
- c. Approval status
- d. Indexing designation or code.

5.2.2.2 Presentation for purpose and scope. The purpose of the procedural information should be stated under "Purpose and Scope" along with a complete description of the applicable equipment. An Example for the purpose and scope section is shown below in Figure 5.2.1, Example of purpose and scope section.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.1. Example of purpose and scope section.

<p>1.0 <u>PURPOSE AND SCOPE</u></p> <p>1.1 This procedure covers the steps for replacing a main steam dump valve pneumatic actuator. This includes the following subtasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Access valve actuator Remove accessories Remove valve actuator to valve body Mount actuator to valve body Install accessories Perform additional maintenance requirements <p>1.2 This procedure is applicable to any Fisher pneumatic control valve, type 667-EWP, size 8 inches x 6 inches, size 87 actuator, with a top mounted handwheel.</p>

5.2.2.3 References. The following items should be listed under references:

- a. Sources that will give the user a deeper understanding of the procedure tasks.
- b. References that are called out in procedural steps and drawings, flow charts, etc. that **are needed** by the user to perform the procedure (Source data used to develop the procedure but not needed otherwise should not be listed).

5.2.2.4 Requirements - tools, test equipment, supplies, and personnel. Required tools, test equipment, and supplies should be listed in a separate section (See also Figure 5.2.2, “Example of tools and supplies section”). Requirements should also be stated at the outset of a procedure for the number, level, and types of maintenance personnel required to accomplish the tasks described by the procedure.

Figure 5.2.2 Example of tools and supplies section.

<p>3.0 <u>TOOLS AND SUPPLIES</u></p> <p>3.1 Tools</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bar, priming, fuel pump (tool # 455) Ladder, extension 12 foot Tool, extraction, nozzle (tool # 410) Wrench, crowfoot, 1 inch <p>3.2 Supplies</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bags, plastic, self-locking (Ziplic or equivalent) Lubricant, O-ring (stock # 77-1385) Nozzle, injector (replacement) P/N 66408-1) Tags, part identification

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

5.2.2.5 Precautions and limitations. General equipment and personnel safety instructions to be followed while using the procedures should be listed in a separate section (See also Figure 5.2.3, Example of a precautions and limitations section).

Figure 5.2.3. Example of a precautions and limitations section.

4.0 PRECAUTIONS AND LIMITATIONS

- 4.1 Be sure that the diesel requiring maintenance remains de-energized and isolated during this procedure to prevent bodily injury and/or equipment damage.
- 4.2 Be sure that system cleanliness is maintained at all times when performing this procedure.
- 4.3 This maintenance action could reduce plant operating capacity if surveillance requirements are not maintained.

5.2.2.6 Prerequisites. The precautions and limitations should also include equipment, unit or station conditions that should be satisfied prior to performing the procedural tasks (See also Figure 5.2.4, Example of a list of prerequisites).

Figure 5.2.4. Example of a list of prerequisites.

- 4.8 This procedure may be performed with the plant in any mode of operation.
- 4.9 Protection cabinets for Channels II, III, and IV must remain closed when at power.
- 4.10 Equipment must have been energized for at least 15 minutes prior to performing this procedure.

5.2.2.7 Main body

5.2.2.7.1 Use of multilevel text. Multilevel text may be used in the main body to provide both high- and low-experience users with sufficient information to perform the procedure effectively. Techniques that may be used to provide multilevel text are:

- a. Highlighting - Key words or phrases should be highlighted within a task step, enabling the experienced person to pick out only the required information without reading through the entire step. Key information for the experienced person may include tolerances, measurements, time, and other pertinent data (See also Figure 5.2.5, Example of highlighting).

Figure 5.2.5. Example of highlighting.

- 8.7 Join cooling water tubes together by sliding hose couplings in place. Tighten those clamps between 10 and 15 inch-pounds. Safety-wire clamps to cylinder head.
- 8.8 Coat new o-rings with lubricant, Dow Corning 602; then, slide them into grooves of nozzle body. Be sure o-rings are properly seated and not twisted.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- b. Subtask command technique - In the subtask command technique, subtask titles should be written as commands that the high-experience maintainer can use. Each subtask command should be followed by related steps that detail the task (See also Figure 5.2.6, Example of the subtask command technique).

Figure 5.2.6. Example of the subtask command technique.

7.1 INSTALL NOZZLE TIP GASKET

- 7.1.1 Using gasket installation tool (P/N 622-1), install new nozzle tip gasket on tip assembly. Be sure that flat surface of gasket fits tightly against tip nut.

5.2.2.7.2 Callouts. Illustrations should be keyed to text through either the numbered callout or direct call-out technique. These techniques are described below:

- a. Numbered callouts - Numbered callouts should be numbered either sequentially in the text or sequentially on a drawing. Sequential numbering in the text has the disadvantage that it results in the scattering of callouts on the illustration and may require searching the illustration for the callout (See also Figure 5.2.7, Numbered callouts).

5.2.2.7.3 Use of caution statements. Maintenance or test practices, procedures, or conditions that may result in hazards or injury to personnel or damage to equipment should be presented in the form of caution statements.

5.2.2.7.4 Use of note statements. Maintenance or test practices, procedures, or conditions of special interest or importance that will aid in or simplify job performance should be presented in the form of note statements.

5.2.2.7.5 Recommended features of caution and note statements. Caution and note statements should:

- a. Be located with the material to which it applies.
- b. Stand out on a page full of other material (See also Figure 5.2.9, Example of a caution statement made to stand out).
- c. Direct callout technique - Noun name identifiers should be placed next to the appropriate pictured item. This technique eliminates some of the layout and referencing problems associated with numbered callouts (Figure 5.2.8).
- d. Attract the user's eye, but not be overpowering.
- e. Be apparent to the user no matter what method is used to access information and enter the manual.
- f. Contain all necessary information.
- g. Be easy to read and understand
- h. Not contain procedural steps.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.7. Numbered callouts.

8.0 Adjustments of Nozzle (continued)

8.5 Connect test pump and tubing (5 and 6) to fuel inlet port (7) of nozzle (8) with plexiglass spray shield in position.

8.6 Operate test pump (5) while turning adjustment screw (9) until nozzle opens (sprays fuel) between 3450 and 3550 psig. Record set pressure as "AS LEFT" pressure on Data Sheet.

 ENTER ON DATA SHEET

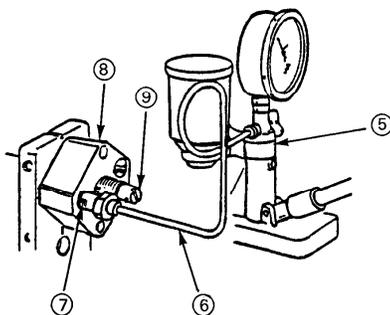


Figure 5.2.8. Direct callouts.

7.5 Adjust intermittent gear as follows:

7.5.1 If rotor has not yet turned 90° and closes contacts, turn intermittent gear slot clockwise (CW) until rotor turns 90°.

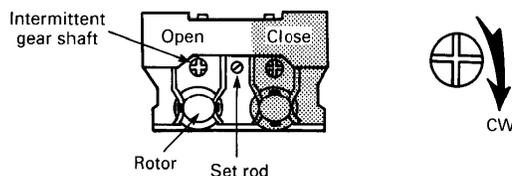


Figure 5.2.9. Example of a caution statement made to stand out.

 * CAUTION *

Keep hands away from nozzle tip during spray test. Spray may puncture the skin, which would result in blood poisoning. If skin puncture occurs, turn off spray and contact plant physician immediately.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

5.2.2.7.6 Information included in caution statements. Caution statements should include the following information, when applicable:

- a. The specific nature of the hazard.
- b. The steps to be taken to avoid or minimize the hazard.
- c. The location or source of the hazard.
- d. The consequences of failing to heed the warning or caution.
- e. Corrective or first-aid actions to be taken if the hazard materializes.
- f. Time considerations when critical.
- g. Maintenance or test information which should be brought to the user's attention.

5.2.2.7.7 Location of caution and note statements. Caution and note statements should be placed according to the following guidelines:

- a. Caution statements should precede and appear on the same page as the text or procedural steps to which they apply.
- b. A note statement may precede or follow a procedural statement to which it applies
- c. When it is necessary to precede a procedural step with both caution and a note statements, the caution statement(s) should appear first.
- d. General caution statement(s) should be placed at the beginning of the procedural steps, or on a "Precautions" page at the front of the procedure or manual.

5.2.2.7.8 Check off. When required by plant policy or for steps in the procedure in which an error of omission is detrimental, a space should be included in the main body for initialing. Checklists should also be provided for lengthy prerequisites or tests to indicate that each step has been completed; however, very long checklists should be avoided since users may tend to avoid them and sign them off after completion of the entire procedure (See also Figure 5.2.10, Example of a double check list for an independent observer).

5.2.2.7.9 Referencing of other sources. To avoid distraction and interruption of work flow referencing of other sources in the main body should be kept to a minimum.

5.2.2.7.10 Conditional statement. The user should be sent to the correct step when a conditional statement is made in the main body (See also Figure 5.2.11, Example of conditional statement in step and as a note).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.10 Example of a double checklist for an independent observer

#1 Initials	#2 Initials	
_____	_____	4.0 Procedure
_____	_____	4.1 Verify main steam lines are blocked.
_____	_____	4.2 Verify steam generator level between 75% and 90% (wide range)
		NOTE: If level is less than 75%, fill steam generator to 75% using Auxiliary Feed System.
		4.3 Perform the following valve line-up:
		CLOSE OR VERIFY CLOSED
_____	_____	4.3.1 2-MS-158 Chain Valve to Aux. Feed
_____	_____	4.3.2 2-MS-377 2-MS-158 Bypass
_____	_____	4.3.3 NRV-MS-202C Isolation to Decay Heat Release
_____	_____	4.3.4 TV-MS-201C M.S. Trip Valve
_____	_____	4.3.5 2-MS-155 M.S. Trip Valve Bypass
_____	_____	4.3.6 PRV-MS-201C Power Operated Relief
_____	_____	4.3.7 2-MS-208 M.S. TV Trap Isolation
_____	_____	4.3.8 2-MS-149 M.S. TV Trap Isolation
_____	_____	4.3.9 2-MS-152 M.S. TV Trap Bypass
_____	_____	4.3.10 TV-BD-200E Inside TV
_____	_____	4.3.11 TV-BD-200F Outside TV
		NOTE: It is the intent of the below steps to compress the vapor contained in the steam generator thereby increasing steam generator pressure to determine the location of the tube leak(s). However, it may be required to completely fill the steam generator and main steam lines to obtain sufficient pressure.
		CAUTION: MONITOR STEAM GENERATOR PRESSURE THROUGHOUT THE TEST. 760 PSIG MAX. PRESSURE.
_____	_____	4.4 Start one (1) Auxiliary Feed Pump.
_____	_____	4.5 Using Auxiliary Feed MOV's for "C" steam generator maintain feed flow approximately 140 gpm.
_____	_____	4.6 Monitor steam generator pressure and level.
_____	_____	4.7 Check for tube leakage on primary side.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.11. Example of conditional statement in a step and as a note.

<u>Conditional Statement in Step</u>
(1) Loosen setscrew and slide de-clutch lever off de-clutch shaft. <u>If de-clutch lever is difficult to remove, do step 2; otherwise go to step 3.</u>
<u>Conditional Statement as NOTE</u>
(2) Operate handpump until pressure gauge reads 2500 psig and hold hand pump handle stationary. Record time it takes pressure to drop to 1000 psig.
***** * NOTE * *****
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the time is less than 10 seconds, do steps 4 through 6; then return to step 3.• If time is 10 seconds or MORE, condition is normal; do step 3.

5.2.2.7.11 Space for recording data. Where applicable, space should be provided for the user to record instrument readings, measurements, and calculated values in the main body (See also Figure 5.2.12, Example of data table).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.12. Example of a data table.

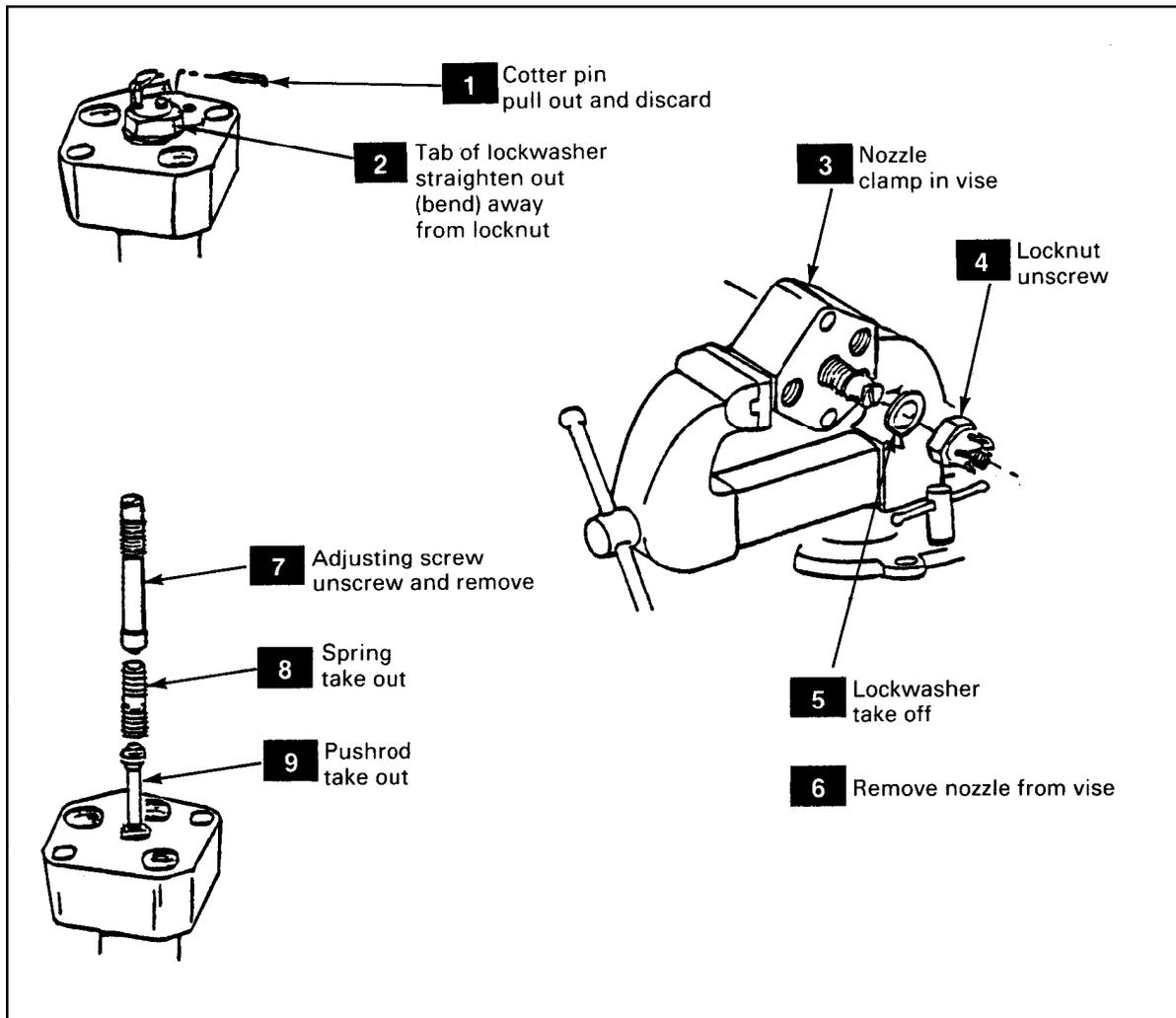
DATA TABLE									
CAL-CN-025 6-30-77									
Sys: Condensate Storage Tank (300,000 Gal.)					Tested: _____		Date: _____		
Sub Sys: Channel L-CN204					Verified: _____		Date: _____		
Procedures: LT-CN024, Magnetic Amplifier					DVM: _____				
Controller					Decade Box: _____				
LT-CN204	LS-CN204A			LI-CN204			LR-CN204		
Inches	Input						Pen #2		
H ₂ O	Des.	Act.	Error	Des.	Act.	Error	Des.	Act.	Error
	v	v	v	%	%	%	%	%	%
20.5	1.183	_____	_____	4.6	_____	_____	4.6	_____	_____
111.9	2.000	_____	_____	25	_____	_____	25	_____	_____
223.75	3.000	_____	_____	50	_____	_____	50	_____	_____
335.6	4.000	_____	_____	75	_____	_____	75	_____	_____
447.5	5.000	_____	_____	100	_____	_____	100	_____	_____
223.75	3.000	_____	_____	50	_____	_____	50	_____	_____
20.5	1.183	_____	_____	4.6	_____	_____	4.6	_____	_____
Noise measurement: _____mv @ _____ma									
Notes or Comments:									
Magnetic Amplifier									
				Des.	Act.	Error			
Actuation: De-energize on Hi:				Bias:	4.900v	_____			
Contact No. 11 & 13;				Defense:	4.750v	_____			
39 feet in a 39 feet span				Alarm/Interlock Actuated: _____					
Notes or Comments:									
Controller									
				Des.	Act.	Error			
Gain:				1.0	_____	_____			
Reset Time:				20 seconds	_____	_____			
Rate Time:				Off	_____	_____			
Notes or Comments:									
Reviewed: _____ Date: _____									

5.2.2.7.12 Format for use with illustrations. The main body should be formatted so that the least amount of searching is required between text and illustrations. Examples of formats that can be used to achieve this objective are:

- Direct cue/response - Each object (cue) to be manipulated is shown graphically and is identified by a leader line pointing to the object along with an identified step number. The action to be taken (response) is written in concise language directly alongside the object (See also Figure 5.2.13, Direct cue/response format).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.13. Direct cue/response format.



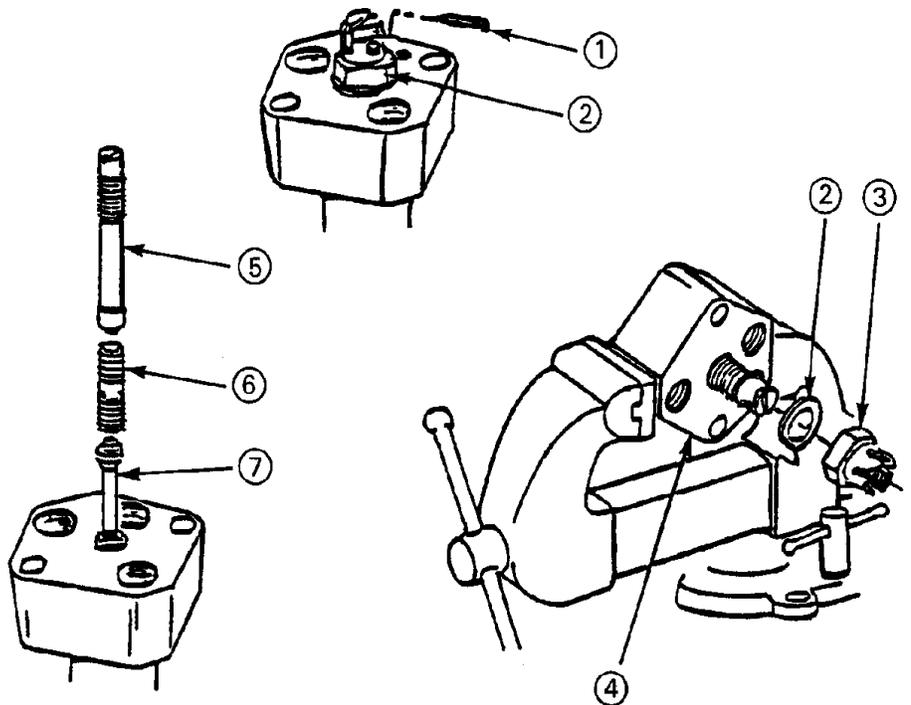
- b. Running text with integrated art - Procedural steps are arranged in the upper half of the page with supporting graphics on the bottom half of the page (See also Figure 5.2.14, Running text with integrated art format).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.14. Running text with integrated art.

7.0 Disassembly of Nozzle

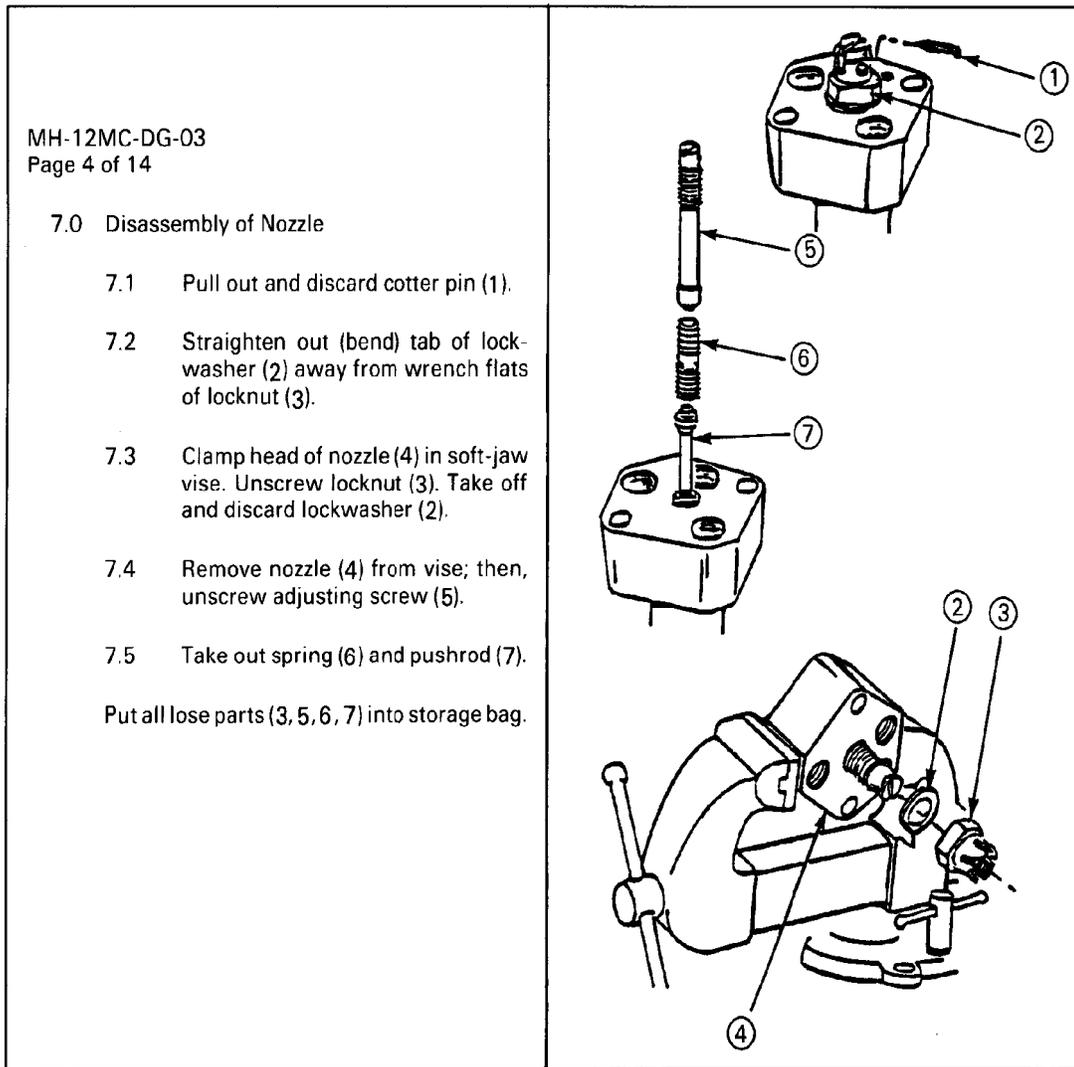
- 7.1 Pull out and discard cotter pin (1).
- 7.2 Straighten out (bend) tab of lockwasher (2) away from wrench flats of locknut (3).
- 7.3 Clamp head of nozzle (4) in soft-jaw vise. Unscrew locknut (3). Take off and discard lockwasher (2).
- 7.4 Remove nozzle (4) from vise; then, unscrew adjusting screw (5).
- 7.5 Take out spring (6) and pushrod (7).
- 7.6 Put all loose parts (3, 5, 6, 7) into storage bag.



- c. Facing page - Procedural steps and supporting graphics are arranged so they are opposite each other when the procedure is opened for use (See also Figure 5.2.15, Facing page format).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

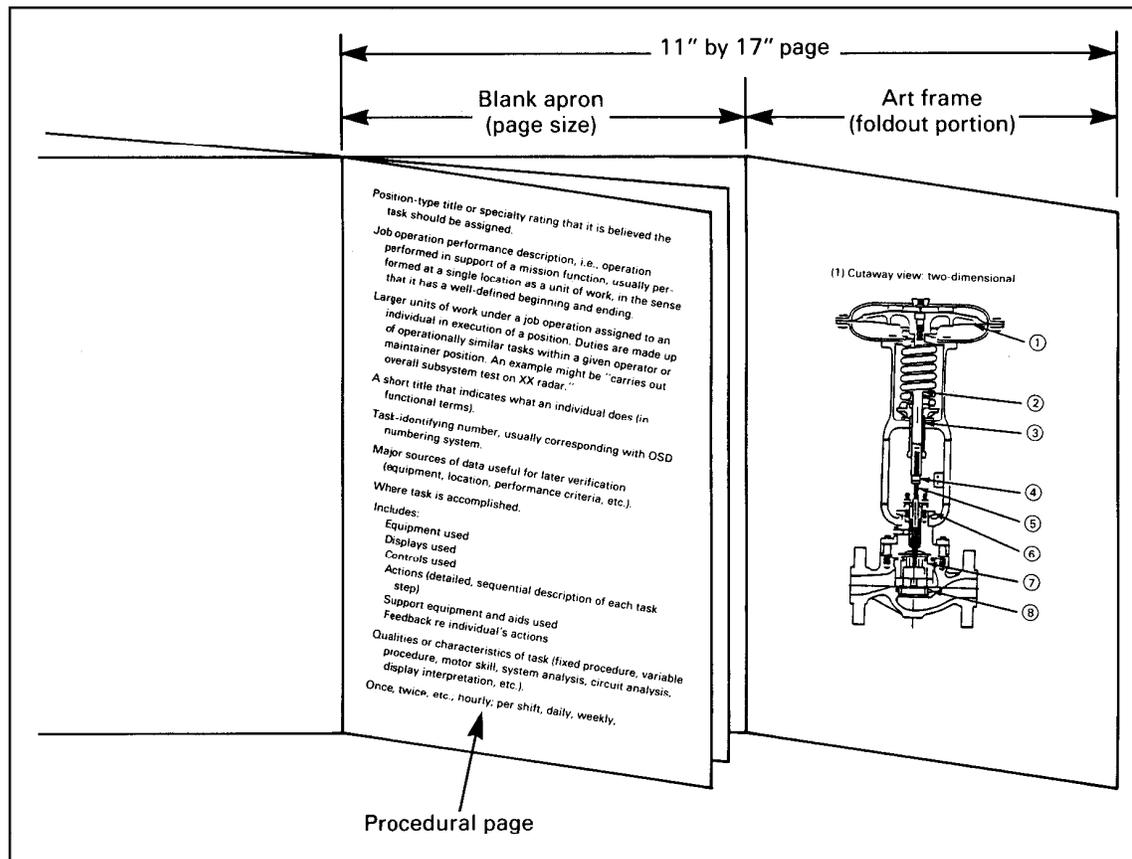
Figure 5.2.15. Facing page format.



- d. Running text with foldout art - Continuous running text is used with the supporting graphics typically presented on a separate foldout page at the end to the procedure (See also Figure 5.2.16, Running text with foldout art format). Note, foldouts should be avoided where possible because they add bulkiness to the procedure and may be more awkward to use and are more easily torn.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 5.2.16. Running text with foldout art format.



5.2.3 Procedural instructions

5.2.3.1 General guidelines for procedural instructions. The following guidelines should be followed for procedural instructions in vendor technical manuals and procedures:

- a. Use step-by-step instructions with no more than three actions per step. For each step, use short sentences of 10 to 14 words with concise and unambiguous language.
- b. Use positive verbs rather than negative verbs. For example, "Press red button when buzzer sounds" should be written rather than, "Do not press red button unless buzzer sounds."
- c. Make symbols and names in the instructions agree with common usage, equipment labels, and legends.
- d. Give the in-tolerance signal characteristic and the acceptable tolerance for each test point.
- e. Highlight cautions and warnings and put them in the manual prior to the action that might be hazardous to either personnel or equipment.

5.2.3.2 Procedural steps as actions or commands. Procedural steps should be written as actions or commands using the following general guidelines:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- a. Begin with the word or phrase that best describes the action to be taken by the maintainer.
- b. Identify the specific equipment hardware item to which the maintainer's behavior is being directed.
- c. Use other words as necessary to show location, method, or direction of manipulation. If graphics convey location or directional movement, these words may not be necessary.

An example of a properly written procedure step would be the following:

Unscrew	locknut	from driveshaft.
(Verb)	(Object)	(Location)

5.2.3.3 Verbs. Verbs that best describe the action taken by the maintainer should be chosen; single-syllable verbs should be chosen instead of multi-syllable verbs. Some examples of common verbs and more effective substitutes are:

<u>Common verb</u>	<u>More effective substitute</u>
Remove	Pull out
Utilize	Use
Accomplish	Do
Actuate	Start, turn on

5.2.3.4 Individual task steps. Each action or related group of actions should be presented in an individual task step. This is illustrated below (See Figure 5.2.17, Presenting actions as task steps):

Figure 5.2.17. Presenting actions as task steps.

USE THIS	NOT THIS
<p>Assembling Injector Tapping Tool</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace defective part. 2. Install nut and washer on hand-tap shank. 3. Install rollpin in nut. 4. Check tapping tool for proper operation. 	<p>Assembling Injector Tapping Tool</p> <p>First, replace the defective part from supply. Install nut and washer on hand-tap shank.</p> <p>Next, place the rollpin in the nut. Upon completion, check the tapping tool for proper operation.</p>

5.2.3.5 Specificity. Procedural instructions should be written in specific terms and required decision-making by the user should be kept to a minimum.

5.2.4 Graphics and illustrations.

Graphics should be used to describe an item or idea more efficiently and effectively; to clarify the text; to aid in identification of parts and special tools; to call attention to details; to supplement information that is difficult to describe by text alone; and to minimize required calculations through display of information.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

5.2.4.1 Photographs. Photographs should be used when the technician must:

- a. Locate and manipulate small, unfamiliar objects located in a maze of other small, unfamiliar objects.
- b. Bring their hands close to hazardous electrical potentials
- c. Recognize qualitative deterioration of a part that could not be shown clearly by a shadowed drawing.

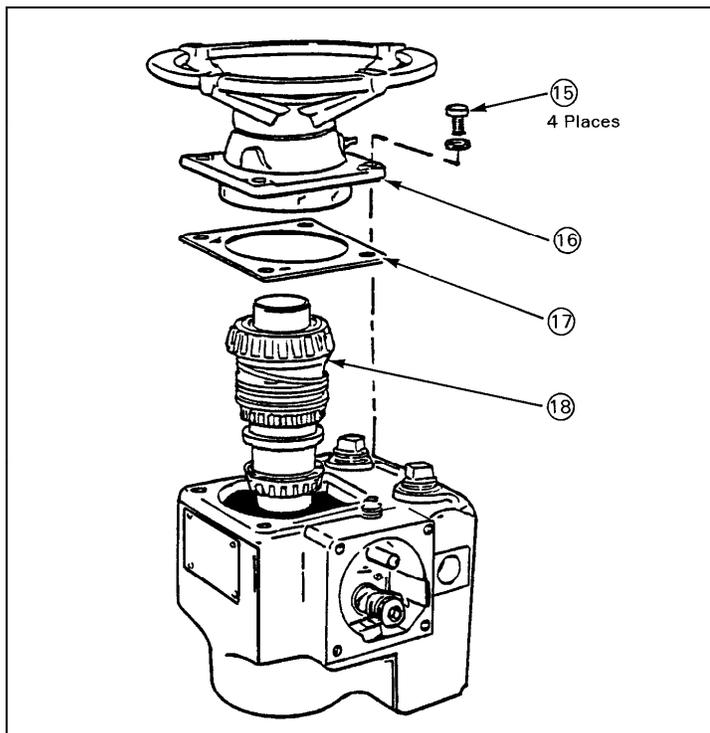
5.2.4.1.1 Callouts on photographs. Callouts on photographs such as arrows indicating test points should stand out clearly.

5.2.4.2 Pictorials. Pictorials are line drawings typically developed by tracing photographs of the equipment. Since pictorials depict equipment as it actually appears, the user may more readily identify the equipment. Lines and details on illustrations should be clear and sharp so they can be copied without dropout. Including an object of easily identifiable size such as a hand or a common tool in the pictorial can increase the maintainer's ability to appreciate the size of the equipment or work area.

5.2.4.4 Drawings. Drawings are particularly useful when some part of equipment must be highlighted or magnified. Show in three-dimensional view, or show a component in relation to other parts when the relationship would not be clear in a pictorial or a photograph.

5.2.4.4.1 Exploded view drawings. Exploded drawing typical show an assembly that has been separated into component parts. They should be used for parts identification and location, for disassembly and re-assembly procedures, and for removal and installation procedures (See also Figure 5.2.18, Exploded view drawing).

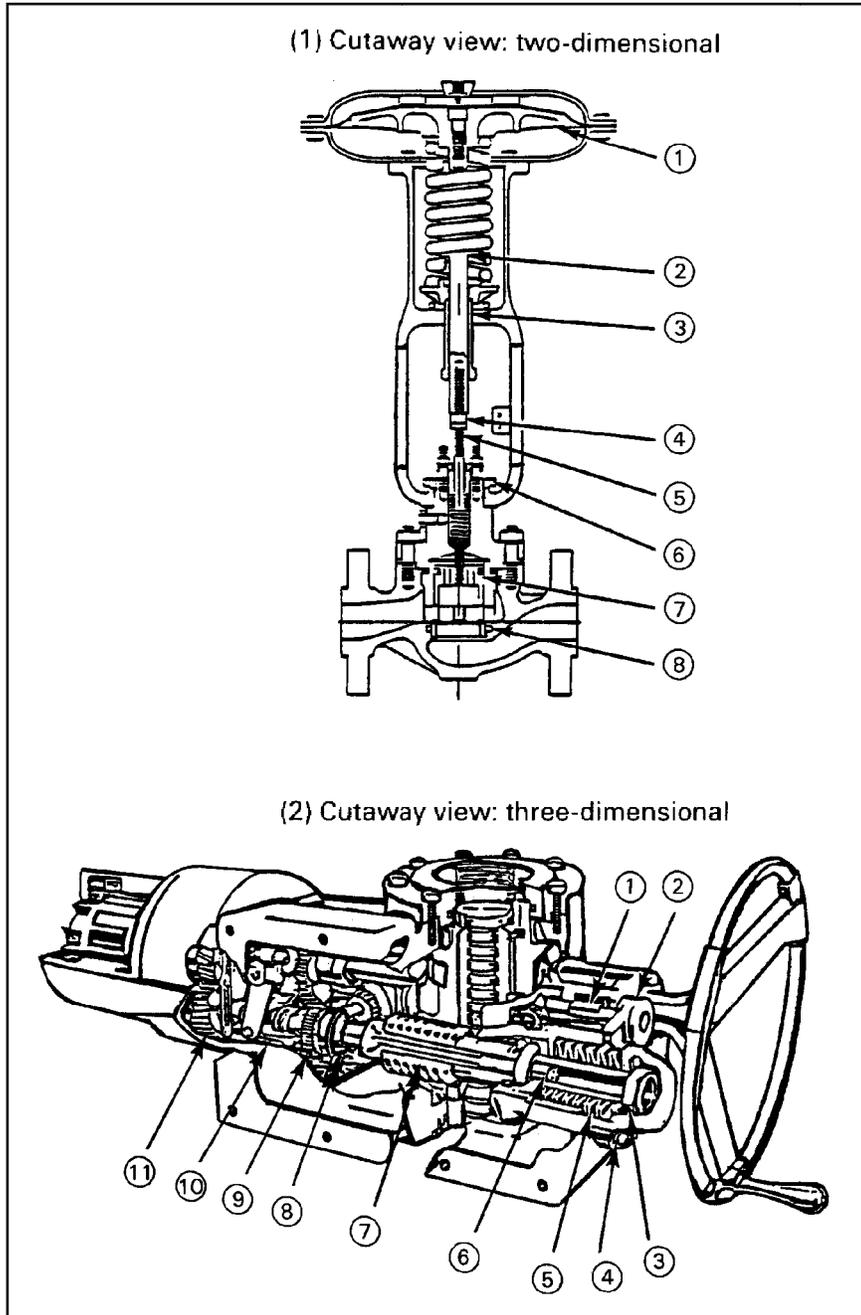
Figure 5.2.18. Exploded view drawing.



DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

5.2.4.4.2 Cutaway view drawings. Cutaway view drawings show how equipment parts are assembled and should be provided when the technician cannot see the part to be maintained (See also Figure 5.2.19, Cutaway view drawings).

Figure 5.2.19. Cutaway view drawings.



5.2.4.5 Data-flow diagrams. Data-flow diagrams may be used to depict processes and interrelationships. If feasible, components in data-flow diagrams should be shown in the same relative position they occupy

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

in the equipment. Only electrical characteristics of the signal should be shown in data-flow diagrams. Electrical characteristics of the components should not be shown.

5.2.4.6 Graphs. Graphs may be used to effectively present a visual image of numerical data and to replace or enhance equations.

5.2.4.7 Tables. Tables should be used to aid in making logical decisions for operational check-out, testing, and calibration tasks.

5.2.5 Troubleshooting procedures. Troubleshooting procedures are specialized procedures used for fault isolation. Fault isolation is perhaps the most demanding maintenance operation for a technician to perform because it involves complex diagnostic problems and decision processes. Troubleshooting procedures should (3.3.4.1):

a. Follow a systematic strategy; a troubleshooting method, common to diagnosing electronic equipment failures, is presented below in a summary form.

(1) Step 1-Visual checks for clues such as smoke, loose connections, or missing or damaged parts.

(2) Step 2-Operational checks by evaluating readings from meters, gauges, and other indicators. Checklists are typically used for this step.

(3) Step 3-Intermediate checks to isolate the malfunction to a particular stage, i.e., unit, assembly, or component.

(4) Step 4-Systematic checks by an ordered inspection of, for example, circuits within a component.

Decision trees and computer-aided techniques are other effective troubleshooting approaches.

b. When available, use probability data for developing troubleshooting procedures.

c. Use short sentences with concise and unambiguous language.

d. When applicable, provide special diagrams for the technician which help in analyzing symptom patterns by indicating which components affect each system output for each step in an operational or intermediate check.

e. Provide double check lists for an independent observer to check specially critical activities.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

INTENTIONALLY BLANK

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

6.0 DEVELOPING MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS**6.1 Preventive maintenance programs**

This section covers aspects of developing preventive maintenance programs. Preventive maintenance refers to scheduled tasks taken prior to functional system or equipment failure (including unacceptable performance degradation) to ensure reliable operation. Effective implementation of preventive maintenance can increase the life of equipment, reduce unscheduled outages and outage time, and reduce the spares inventory required. Preventive maintenance programs should be based on the following considerations

- a. Maintenance activities should be concentrated on systems and components where in-service failure would have significant consequences (either safety or economic).
- b. For most items, use of hard-time policies where an item must be removed from service at or before a previously specified time is less effective than a good program of equipment monitoring and diagnostics.
- c. Management of information is crucial to the overall program.

6.1.2 Steps in developing a preventive maintenance program. The steps in developing a preventive maintenance program are listed below:

- a. Establishing a program-planning group with broad organizational participation.
- b. Selecting the systems to analyze and identifying functions performed by the components in those systems.
- c. Identifying, by analysis of operating history or of equipment design the most likely significant failure modes of the equipment.
- d. Identifying the need for a preventive maintenance task to reduce the possibility of a functional failure.
- e. Determining whether the preventive maintenance task is justified based on its costs and benefits.

6.1.2.1 Establishing a program planning group.

6.1.2.1.1 Membership. In addition to the maintenance department personnel, maintenance related tasks may be performed by plant engineering, I&C, and electrical maintenance and laboratory groups; consequently, all appropriate plant departments should be represented in preventive maintenance program development.

6.1.2.1.2 General orientation. The program organization should feature a general orientation for all group members on the preventive maintenance activities being performed by each of the plant departments. A consensus should be achieved on what constitutes preventive maintenance so that all members are aware of the present group.

6.1.2.1.3 Objectives. As an initial activity, the group should reach agreement on program objectives.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

6.1.2.1.4 List of preventative maintenance tasks. The group should establish a list of currently performed preventive maintenance tasks.

6.1.2.2 Selecting systems and component functions within those systems.

6.1.2.2.1 Define systems. As a first step in this phase, the system boundaries should be established and agreed on by all group members. Plant components should then be partitioned by systems.

6.1.2.2.2 Critical systems list. Prioritize each of the systems developed in step 6.1.2.2.1. Define systems, based on the safety and economic impact of system failure. The systems on the critical systems list are those for which failure has relatively high safety and/or economic impact.

6.1.2.2.3 Component function identification. For systems on the critical systems list, functions provided by equipment/components comprising the system should next be identified.

6.1.2.2.4 Critical equipment/components list. The equipment/components for which failure might significantly compromise critical system function should be identified.

6.1.2.3 Identifying significant failure modes of equipment. Using failure modes effects analysis incorporating the experience of plant staff members and results from a review of equipment history, the group should identify the failure modes most likely to result in the loss of critical equipment function.

6.1.2.4 Identify need for preventive maintenance task. The group should use a strategy such as the decision logic tree shown below to identify the need for preventive maintenance tasks (See Figure 6.1.1, Decision logic tree. Note that decision nodes are indicated by an arrow and a number and that decision points 4, 6, 7, and 8 have preventive maintenance as a possible outcome).

6.1.2.5 Cost benefits analysis. The groups should determine whether the preventive maintenance task is justified on the basis of an economic trade-off study. An economic trade-off study should involve the following steps

- a. Estimate the incremental effect of preventive maintenance on the failure rate of the item for several different maintenance intervals.
- b. Translate the reduced failure rate into cost reductions. Cost reductions include both the cost of repair and indirect cost savings due to increased equipment availability and/or increased safety.
- c. Estimate the cost of performing preventive maintenance for each of the maintenance intervals considered.
- d. Determine the maintenance interval, if one exists, at which the cost-benefit ratio is most favorable.

6.1.3 Preventive maintenance not justified. Where preventive maintenance is not justified or where it seems advisable to supplement it with other ways of increasing system or equipment reliability, other approaches such as redesign, use of more reliable components or equipment, use of protective devices to minimize the effects of failure (See also Section 2.5.3, Protective devices), or use of monitoring programs to identify failures. (See section 6.2, Monitoring Programs)

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

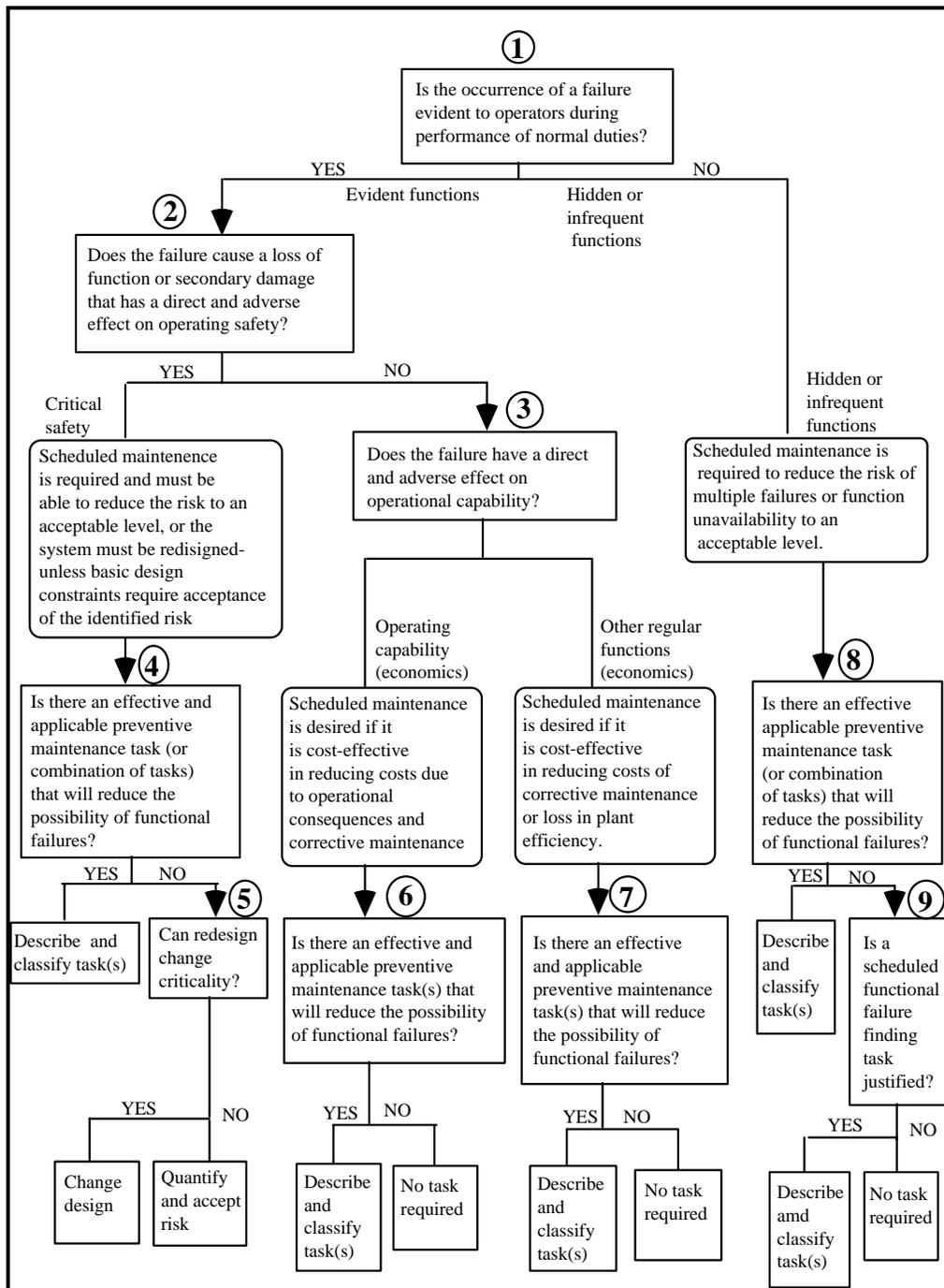
6.1.4 Types of preventive maintenance tasks

6.1.4.1 Scheduled restoration tasks. Scheduled restoration tasks entail taking a maintenance action (for example, overhauling an assembly) to restore the item to its initial low failure probability rate prior to the item age at which failure becomes substantially more likely; restoration being done regardless of the items condition at that time. Scheduled restoration may be used if:

- a. There is an identifiable age at which the item shows a rapid increase in likelihood of failure
- b. Most of the items survive to that age (all of the items if failure has safety or environmental consequences).
- c. Restoration actually restores the item to a prolonged, relatively low failure rate.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 6.1.1 Decision logic tree.



6.1.4.2 Scheduled discard tasks. Scheduled discard tasks entail discarding and replacing an item before a specified age at which failure becomes substantially more likely, regardless of the items condition at time of replacement. Scheduled discard tasks may be used if:

- a. There is an identifiable age at which the item shows a rapid increase in likelihood of failure.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- b. Most of the items survive to that age (all of the items if the failure has safety or environmental consequences).

6.1.4.3 Scheduled on-condition tasks. Scheduled on-condition tasks refer to maintenance actions undertaken when a scheduled inspection indicates that potential failure is about to occur or is in the process of occurring (for example, replacing gears when particles in the gearbox oil show that gear failure is imminent). Scheduled on-condition tasks may be used if:

- a. It is possible to define a clear, observable physical condition that indicated potential failure.
- b. The time interval between which the item can first be observed as being failure prone and occurrence of the actual failure is fairly consistent.
- c. It is practical to monitor the item at intervals which are less than this consistent time interval.
- d. This consistent time interval is long enough to avoid the consequences of functional failure.

6.2 Monitoring programs to detect functional failure (including unacceptable performance degradation).

Monitoring programs are provided for early detection of component and equipment functional failure (including unacceptable performance degradation). Scheduled monitoring programs entail checking items for which functional failure is not apparent at regular intervals to determine whether failure has occurred. Such failure finding programs may be used if:

- a. A functional failure will not become evident to the operating crew under normal circumstances.
- b. The failure is one for which a suitable preventive task cannot be found.
- c. It is practical to do the task at the required frequency.
- d. The task does not increase the risk of failure of the item or other associated items.

6.2.1 Selection of monitoring methods. The selections of monitoring methods should be based on cost-effectiveness (including safety factors) considerations.

6.2.2 Failure modes effects analysis. Analysis of potential failure modes and their effects may be used to support the identification of potential means of failure detection. The failure mode analysis links an equipment function and the failure mode(s) that may result in the loss of this function. For types of equipment and systems with operating histories, reliability and availability data can aid in identifying failure modes having high cost impacts (See also Table 6.2.1, Sample portion of Failure modes effects analysis).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Table 6.2.1. Sample portion of component failure modes effects analysis.

Component: Boiler Feed Pump		
Function	Failure mode	Effect
1. Provide flow	A. Journal bearing failure B. Cavitation damage C. Impeller breakage D. Shaft breakage E. Thrust bearing failure F. Impeller wear ring failure	Function lost Function degraded Function lost Function lost Function lost Function degraded
2. Provide feedwater pressure boundary	A. Seal leakage B. Weld failure C. Corrosion/erosion	Function degraded Function degraded Function degraded

6.2.2.1 Candidate monitoring approaches. Failure modes effects analysis can be extended to catalogue candidate monitoring approaches (See also Table 6.2.2, Classification of functional failures for selection of monitoring approaches).

Table 6.2.2. Example of classification of functional failures for selection of monitoring approaches.

Component: Boiler Feed Pump			
Failure mode	Criticality	Applicable monitoring approaches	Type of activity*
Journal bearing failure	Economic/generation	Vibration analysis Inspection (tear down) Thermographics	V I V
Cavitation	Economic/generation	Inspection (tear down) Acoustics	I V
Impeller breakage	Economic/generation	Flow/discharge trending Inspection (tear down) Acoustics Efficiency	V I V V
Seal leakage	Economic/repair	Visual inspection	A/S

* A/S - Adjustment and servicing, V - Verification, I - Inspection

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

6.2.3 Considerations for selecting monitoring approach. Considerations in selecting a monitoring approach should include the following:

- a. Likelihood of timely detection - As an example, the use of broad-band vibration monitoring to detect bearing failure may not be able to provide timely warning, whereas spectral analysis of bearing temperature monitors can give earlier warning for some failure modes.
- b. Signal-to-noise ratio - The effects of condition noise and the likelihood of false alarms should be considered. Signal-to-noise ratios should be high enough to keep false alarm rate and rate of detection failures low. Computers enhancement may be used to increase signal-to-noise ratio.

6.2.3.1 Zonal inspections. Equipment and system design should provide features that enhance condition monitoring during walkaround inspections.

6.2.4 Monitoring programs not justified. Where scheduled monitoring programs for failure are not justified and preventive maintenance is not applicable or where it seems advisable to supplement such monitoring programs with other ways of increasing system or equipment reliability, other approaches such as redesign, use of more reliable components or equipment, and use of protective devices to minimize the effects of failure (See also Section 2.5.3, Protective devices), should be considered.

6.3 Servicing and adjustment

Servicing and adjustment refers to routine, scheduled maintenance activities that require little or no downtime and are intended to maintain operational capability. Examples of servicing and adjustment tasks are:

- a. Clean and inspect filters and strainers.
- b. Clean and inspect motor controllers.
- c. Calibrate pressure gauge.
- d. Adjust valve or pump packing.

6.3.1 Use of servicing and adjusting approach. The advantages and disadvantages of using the servicing and adjusting approach should be systematically considered before deciding whether a function should be covered by a servicing and adjusting task or by another approach. See Table 6.3.1, Advantages and disadvantages of using servicing and adjusting approaches.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Table 6.3.1. Advantages and disadvantages of using servicing and adjusting approaches.

Advantages	Problems
Servicing	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A means is provided for replenishing the used items such as oil • Protection is provided against wearout failures because of factors such as friction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service points must be accessible and thus constraints are placed on structural design. • Fuels may be hazardous and require special provisions and handling methods. Because of such hazards, fueling may have to be done outdoors regardless of climatic conditions. • Since some servicing items are in themselves contaminants, great care must be exercised in preventing spills and accomplishing clean up.
Adjusting	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Costly and sometimes time consuming replacement of elements may be reduced by the returning of out-of-tolerance elements to within tolerance limits. • An indication of system degradation can be obtained by having skilled personnel observe display response to control manipulation. • The tolerance limits for some components can be broadened. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The process is often slow and tedious. • Errors of display reading and over-adjustment may result in system degradation. • Manipulation by an inexperienced maintainer may result in equipment malfunctions and system degradation.

6.3.1.1 Use and placement of servicing points. Requirements for servicing and adjusting should be minimized by using maintenance-free components such as sealed bearings and highly reliable components. The following requirements should be considered in determining use and placement of service points

- a. Requirements for portable test and auxiliary equipment (built-in indicators that reduce the need for portable test equipment)
- b. Requirements for supporting technical information, procedures, and training.
- c. Requirements for access, work space, and work clearance, including platforms to support the portable equipment.
- d. Requirements for facility support, such as electric power and service air needed for the servicing tasks.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

For additional information concerning service point design, see Sections 2.4 and 2.8, Equipment accessibility and Test and service point design, of this document.

6.4 Maintenance information management systems

Maintenance information management system refers to a system, typically at least in part computer based, for work scheduling, fault detection, status of consumables, displaying and analyzing system status indicators related to maintenance, and other aspects of coordinating maintenance operations and systems used to perform these activities. Systems designed to integrate/display and control equipment and plant systems are not covered here except as they touch on aspects related to maintenance.

6.4.1 Design requirements for maintenance information management systems. Design requirements for maintenance information management systems are provided below.

- a. Maintenance information management systems should provide the following information:
 - (1) Status indications to/and from all subsystems for the purpose of system maintenance and trouble-shooting procedures.
 - (2) Where applicable, trend data acquisition and analysis to show the progression of subsystem performance over time.
 - (3) Status of consumable necessary for system operation and maintenance.
 - (4) Fault detection/isolation
 - (5) Scheduled maintenance data
 - (6) Repair/replacement information
 - (7) Replacement unit maintenance history and maintenance checklists
- b. Recording and Retrieval - The system will provide for the recording and retrieving of maintenance information, where necessary this capability should be provided in real or in near real time.
- c. Fail Operational Systems - All systems that incorporate an automated fail-operational capability should be designed to provide system operator notification and information system status indication of malfunctions until the faults have been corrected.
- d. Spares/Replacement unit inventory - The automated information management system should contain an inventory to identify ID numbers, quantities of, and locations of replacement units. This management system should also contain a "Characteristics" matrix for each type of replacement unit including information such as:
 - (1) Replacement unit ID number
 - (2) Whether unit contains built in test-equipment
 - (3) Hazardous system factors

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- (4) Critical system status indicating need for replacement
- (5) Availability, location, and any special procedures needed to obtain unit
- (6) Shelf-life limits
- (7) Serial number traceable to manufacturer
- (8) Date of manufacture
- (9) Storage constraints
- (10) Procedures, tools, and test equipment required for successful installation and testing (added by LP).

6.5 Software and program maintenance

Software or program maintenance is defined as the process of modifying existing operational software to fix errors, to accommodate different operational environments such as new hardware or software platforms, to add new functions and/or improve program efficiency, or to anticipate future problems by making software easier to maintain or modify. It covers system life-cycle phases from change requirements analysis to implementation and documentation of program modification.

6.5.1 Design for maintainability. Software supporting maintenance information systems and other software developed to meet DOE needs should be designed for maintainability in accord with the guidelines presented below.

6.5.1.1 Transition plan. Prior to a software developer/vendor turning over a software system to the software maintenance or support organization, an adequate transition plan should be in place which specifies the group responsible for program maintenance and what their duties will be in this regard. There should be a written maintenance methodology that formally specifies the process of change management

6.5.1.1.1 Training for software maintainers. Prior to and during the transition phase training on the software system should be provided to software maintenance or support personnel concerning the structure and organization of the system. The maintenance organization should receive training before the system is turned over thorough spending time with the developer and performing functions such as tracking problems, configuration management, testing and integration, and fixing code.

6.5.1.2 Documentation. A system produced for or by DOE should be provided with adequate documentation to allow system maintainers to adequately understand the system for future modification. This documentation should be up-to-date and should include a model of the system, a software listing, test /validation documentation, system specification, etc.

6.5.1.2.1 Updating documentation. Whenever the software system is changed the documentation including the system model and software listing should be updated accordingly. In addition to updating system documentation a change history should be maintained to provide information on changes made so that maintainers will be aware of past problems encountered and the reason for changes that were made.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

6.5.1.3 Analysis of likely change. The initial system analysis undertaken for system development should identify areas where control and transaction requirements are likely to change in the future; the initial system analysis should provide or at least suggest a means to institute enhancements to respond to these changes at a later date. Change prone modules which will have significant maintenance activity applied to them over the life cycle of the software should be identified where possible and overhauled to reduce the need for later maintenance.

6.5.1.4 Analysis of problems and possible solutions. Changes to an existing software program should not be developed or instituted without prior analysis. This analysis should be used to clearly specify the problem (including the exact conditions in which it occurs), the enhancement, or the adaptation being considered, what part(s) of the software have to be modified to meet the need or to solve the problem, and how these modifications should be made. It will also be used to determine whether it is better to develop a new system or module or to make changes in the existing system or module. The results of the requirements analysis should be documented.

6.5.1.5 Testing modified software. After software has been modified, affected modules should be identified and individually tested to assure they meet the requirements for which they were developed. Finally, the individual modules should be combined and tested as a whole. Testing should include test cases which assure that the old desired capabilities are still satisfactorily met as well as added cases to assess whether new requirements are being met.

6.5.1.6 Notifying users of design changes. When changes are made to software system design, including changes in related job aids, the users should be informed of those changes.

6.5.1.7 Training for users. Where necessary provisions should be made for training users on new system modifications.

6.5.1.8 Protection from design change. User interface design should be protected from any changes that might impair system function. (Section 6.5, Design change, Smith and Mosier).

6.5.1.8.1 Consistency. Changes in the computer interface, data entry and display should be consistent with the original system (for instance, in terms or mode of interaction with the computer, terminology used, coding employed, and messages and prompts). The original interface design need not be frozen; if features are added, the original interface design may be changed so that it is consistent with the “add-ons” or new modifications.

6.5.1.9 Revising related job-aids. Related job aids such as help screens, users manuals, and procedures use of the revised software, should be kept current with changes in the software and hardware system.

6.6 Maintainability design as a part of system development

Maintainability design refers to the preferred phasing or sequencing of maintainability design activities during system development. Note that only basic principles for developing and implementing a design plan and schedule for maintainability are presented in these guidelines. No attempt is made to detail characteristics of a design program for maintainability.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

6.6.1 General guidelines

6.6.1.1 Studying operational equipment. Operational equipment, resembling the type being designed, should be studied by the design team. Particular attention should be paid to maintenance features of the equipment and to correct those features that are lacking in the equipment.

6.6.1.2 Reviewing entire system. The entire system (within which the equipment is to be installed) should be reviewed to determine information such as where the equipment will be installed, access opening measurements, etc.

6.6.1.2.1 Use of aids to show maintenance/design sequences and relations. Flow diagrams, event trees, state diagrams, schedule charts, or other visual displays should be used to show maintenance or design sequences and relations.

6.6.1.3 Use of existing test equipment and tools. Test equipment and tools already in use on related equipment that might be adapted to the equipment being designed should be determined.

6.6.1.4 Determining personnel requirements for maintenance. Maintenance technician availability, required skills and level of proficiency should be determined.

6.6.1.5 Storage and work facilities. Existing storage and work facilities, if any, should be determined.

6.6.1.6 Maintenance information and aids. A determination should be made of the type and quantity of maintenance information (diagrams, manuals, procedures and other job aids, etc.) that will be required to maintain the equipment, how much of the information is available, and how much information must be developed.

6.6.1.7 Supply facilities. Supply facilities should be determined which are available to provide spare parts for the equipment.

6.6.1.8 Design for accommodation over plant life. In designing a plant, allowances should be made for changes in maintenance needs during different phases of plant construction and changes in needs due to plant aging and increasing radiation levels.

6.6.2 Development of design for system maintainability.

6.6.2.1 Tasks or phases in developing system maintainability design. An overall plan for maintainability should be developed to include the following tasks to insure the design for maintainability will proceed in an orderly and effective manner

- a. Project definition phase - Proposals for new systems should include quantitative maintainability objectives as an inherent portion of the performance objectives. A maintainability program and appropriate documentation, including the maintainability objectives, and a plan for achieving and evaluating objectives should be included.
- b. Development program phase - The development program phase should include or provide for the following essential elements:

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- (1) Program plan - Contains maintainability objectives, plans, goals, and milestones for accomplishment and evaluation which can be demonstrated on a time basis. This plan can also serve as a guide for all design, production, and product assurance engineers.
 - (2) Quantitative modes - Provides goals for maintainability, availability, etc. to serve as a standard for demonstrating the design achieved. This model can also be used in determining the maintainability status and effectiveness of the system during all stages of design, development, and testing.
 - (3) Specification review - Emphasizes the importance of maintainability as part of the overall design program. As an initial effort of the program, a complete and thorough study of maintainability and other related product assurance specifications should be made.
 - (4) Prediction and analysis - Provides preliminary maintainability predictions based on data supplied through integrated test program.
 - (5) Training program - Orients to maintainability all engineering personnel participating in equipment or system development.
 - (6) Human factors engineering - Reviews equipment design concepts for logic, display control configurations, and operations emphasizing system maintainability.
 - (7) Change control - Procedure assures that design changes required for and affecting maintainability are carefully reviewed.
 - (8) Scheduled design reviews - insures that design changes required for and affecting maintainability are carefully reviewed.
 - (9) Methods for considering design tradeoffs - Considers in early development phase, the designs which, while conforming to maintainability specifications, do not always meet other specified requirements; i.e., operational requirements, reliability, economic limitations, and performance requirements.
 - (10) Vendors indoctrination program - Provides subcontractors with maintainability guidelines and specifications.
 - (11) Maintainability demonstration - Conducted to obtain maintainability data that cannot be evaluated by analytical methods, or as required to verify that maintainability requirements have been met by equipment vendor or contractor.
 - (12) Scheduled evaluation and improvement - Evaluates data feedback from demonstrations, tests, and field areas for supporting design improvement recommendations and for verification of maintainability predictions.
- c. Production phase - During this phase, the maintainability requirements and objectives must be consistent with those established during design and development, i.e., with the maintenance support plan. Close surveillance should be provided to assure that quality assurance requirements and maintainability specifications are met. This phase considers:
-

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- (1) Quality control - Maintains high quality in workmanship and manufacturing standards with respect to maintainability. Poor quality control practices must be isolated and corrective action initiated to preclude maintainability problems in the field.
 - (2) Modification and change control - Establishes coordination procedures between design and manufacturing activities to insure that changes or modifications to equipment design are agreed upon before they are initiated. In all cases the designer must concur with the changes.
- d. Operational phase - The final verification of ease and safety of maintainability is accomplished during this period. This phase includes:
- (1) Initial development stage - Based upon evaluation of data accumulated relative to design tests, engineering costs, user tests, system demonstrations, transportation, storage assembly, emplacement and check-out. Data should be analyzed and recommendations made for product improvement for future equipment.
 - (2) Field operating stage - Despite the best efforts of designers to incorporate ease and safety of maintainability into the facility and equipment, unforeseen problems may be expected to arise. Consequently the DOE facility should have a program for systematically collecting and reviewing maintainability data and data concerning problems experienced on a scheduled, periodic basis as well as at other times as the need arises. Active maintenance data should be analyzed from all equipment sites and used to validate predicted maintainability figures. Unsatisfactory Equipment Reports (UER), Equipment Improvement Reports (EIR), or equivalent methods, should be utilized.

6.6.2.2 Requirements for implementation of design program for maintainability. To successfully implement a design program for maintainability, the maintainability plan should.

- a. Be sufficiently flexible to permit revision and updating at any point in the program.
- b. Include the various tasks and milestones, and approximate times required to accomplish each. (This is the design schedule.)
- c. Show each key event, and the coordinated sequence of occurrences, and the interrelationship of events. (This may be shown within the design schedule.)
- d. Provide valuable impetus for determining project costs and the most economical allocation of personnel.
- e. Provide a mechanism for developing and revising related materials such as maintenance procedures and training programs
- f. Provides adequate mechanisms for design verification of maintainability.
- g. Provide a mechanism operational feedback as outlined above

6.6.3 Design Verification of maintainability.

Design verification is an integral process in steps a through d. It entails use of a set of procedures to assure that the maintainability objectives, plans, and goals are actually being achieved. Design

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

verification refers to those procedures that are used to assure that ease and safety criteria for maintainability of facilities, systems, subsystems and equipment are actually being met.

6.6.3.1 Worst case reference framework. In attempting to verify the adequacy of man-machine interfaces, the system should be tailored to match the abilities and limitations of the **least** skilled personnel who will be assigned to maintain the equipment under the most realistic worst-case scenario. Maintenance tasks that may appear reasonable under normal work circumstances or environments may appear difficult and/or error-prone under less optimal conditions. Performance-degrading conditions that may be encountered at DOE nuclear facilities include

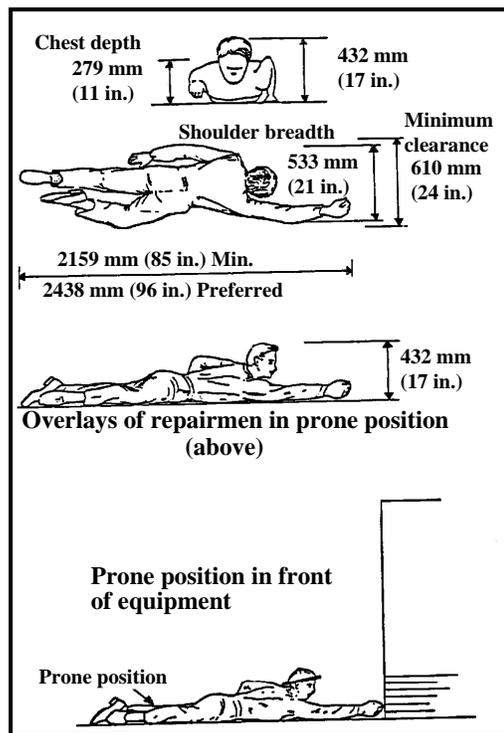
- a. High thermal environments that may be coupled with the use of anti-contamination protective gear.
- b. Fatigue and stress associated with excessive overtime during extended outages
- c. Use of outside personnel who may not be as skilled or motivated as in-house personnel.
- d. High noise environments that impede effective communication

6.6.3.2 Techniques for design verification. The techniques outlined below may be used to check the ease and safety of maintainability for planned or extant equipment, systems, and facilities.

6.6.3.2.1 Use of overlays. Overlay transparencies of workers in different postures as well as equipment such as forklift trucks at an appropriate scale may be prepared for superimposition on drawings of frontal or side views of different equipment and workstation arrangements. The fifth and ninety-fifth percentile user should be used. Where applicable, these overlays should include the worker wearing protective gear (See Figure 6.6.1, Use of prone position overlay to evaluate required clearance, for example of overlays).

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Figure 6.6.1. Use of prone position overlay to evaluate required clearance.



6.6.3.2.2 Use of Articulated templates or mannequins. Articulated plastic figures of fifth and ninety-fifth percentile workers created to scale may be used in addition to or in place of overlays to provide a variety of anticipated work positions. They may be designed to reflect protective gear encumbrances.

6.6.3.2.3 Use of computer aided design. Computer based anthropometric aids in which the designer calls up the design drawing and view of interest and then has the computer superimpose the maintenance person and/or equipment in the position of interest are receiving increasing use and should be considered. The human figure can be matched in scale and varied in size from the fifth to the ninety-fifth percentile values. Similarly, where plant configuration models are developed, they can be used to model equipment access, access space required to mount test equipment, laydown areas for equipment during dismantling and removal, and rigging operations for large components including all equipment and scaffolding required. Spatial conflicts, personnel access, and radiation levels can be identified and evaluated.

6.6.3.2.4 Scale models. Three dimensional scale models may serve as a valuable design tool and review aid in early design stages. For human factors evaluation purposes, models of maintenance personnel are created to the same scale as plant design models. Personnel models should be created to cover both ends of the anthropometric range with and without special protective gear encumbrances. Note that models may serve functions that transcend original design review needs. They may be used to create drawings in two dimensions as well as for training aids for orientation of plant personnel.

6.6.3.2.5 Full scale mock-ups. As the design concept for the system, equipment, or facility component advances it may be necessary to develop full scale mockups because it may be relatively difficult to envision the full range of task elements, work motions, and work postures from an examination of relatively small-scale models of men and equipment or two-dimensional figures. Simple inexpensive cardboard or Styrofoam mockups can be used to resolve many design issues. When the mockup must

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

support the weight of personnel, a sturdy wooden or metal framework may be needed. For design review purposes, the materials selected should allow for successive design changes until the best approach is determined. When using mockups for design verification, it is important to select maintenance personnel who reflect the anticipated anthropometric range. Fifth and ninety-fifth percentile personnel should participate in mockup evaluation exercises. Mockups can serve to evaluate factors such as

- a. Clearances for tool use
- b. Clearances required for maintenance crew interactions
- c. Adequacy of design for personnel encumbered with protective clothing and gear
- d. Laydown space
- e. Pull space
- f. Procedures, parts, test equipment/laydown
- g. Visibility and readability of labeling
- h. Reach factors
- i. Work platforms
- j. Handling features
- k. Biomechanical load stresses
- l. Health physics protection factors

6..6.3.2.6 Simulation. Where the real operational environment is important such as ones that may have high temperature and humidity, unreliable communication, high noise, radiation concerns, inadequate illumination, etc. a simulated operational environment may be necessary. Where the normal system response to maintainer actions is required then a simulator rather than a mockup is needed. The degree of simulator fidelity required depends on what is being evaluated. Note that “simulation” may vary from use of a mock-up in a quasi-operational environment to use of a high fidelity simulator.

6.6.3.2.7 Laboratory and field human factors research. When an answer to a critical question arises a carefully designed applied research may prove the most expeditious and cost-effective route to follow. Research can be conducted in the laboratory or in the plant as appropriate, depending on the nature of the research question and the stage of facility development. For example, in selecting an effective communication system for a high-noise environment different configurations of communication systems may be tested in simulated or real conditions.

6.6.3.2.8 Maintainability demonstrations. Where the facility, system, subsystem or equipment, is being supplied by a contractor, the contractor may be required to demonstrate the maintainability of the system being produced in a highly formal and structured manner. Maintenance demonstrations should be conducted as part of a maintainability test plan that is prepared and submitted as part of the contractors or vendors proposal. The demonstration is to assure the DOE client that stipulated maintainability design criteria have been met. The demonstration should be conducted in an environment that simulates, as

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

closely as practical, the actual maintenance environment planned for the equipment or system under consideration. This environment should be representative of the working conditions, tools, support equipment, facilities, and technical manuals that would be required during actual maintenance activities. To conduct effective maintainability demonstrations, a test plan that includes the following elements must be developed and implemented:

- a. Definitive statement of maintainability requirements or evaluation criteria
- b. Facility requirements for conduction a realistic test of the system being evaluated
- c. Roles of test team personnel, client representatives, and other participating agencies
- d. Description of support equipment, tools, test equipment, technical manuals and procedures, spares and consumables, safety equipment, and calibration equipment.
- e. Identification of maintenance tasks to be demonstrated
- f. Organization and training of test team personnel
- g. Training of maintenance personnel in conducting the maintenance tasks to be demonstrated
- h. Schedule of tests and data acquisition methods and measurements
- i. Demonstration report with recommendations for correcting deviations from established maintainability requirements

Note that comparable steps to a maintainability demonstration should be undertaken for an in-house project and are indicated in items a through d.

6.6.3.2.9 Surveys and checklists. As the facility or system is being developed special surveys and checklists may used to assess whether items related to maintainability such as illumination, noise, communications, safety protection equipment, labeling and coding, hoisting and lifting provisions and other topics of concern meet human factors design criteria. As human engineering problems surface, mechanisms should be provided for documenting, tracking, and resolving such problems. Such surveys should also be used when the plant, system, or equipment is in operation to assure continued conformance to human factors guidelines and standards and to identify problems. User surveys may be undertaken to tap the experience and insight of experienced maintenance personnel with existing systems or with proposed systems. In addition to actual maintenance personnel it may be appropriate to survey trainers, health physics technicians, quality specialists, and others who have knowledge of maintenance activities and potential problem areas. Mechanisms which can be employed to gather user experience include:

- a. Informal interviews - Periodic contacts and discussions can be held with maintenance personnel to determine current problem areas or to identify probable future problem areas. This approach produces less reliable data that the structured interview approach
- b. Structured interviews - A pre-planned series of queries can be used to determine problem areas. These questions are put to maintenance personnel in a face-to-face interview where an experienced interviewer can explore casual factors associated with maintenance difficulties. The structured interview should be followed by a plant tour to examine first-hand the facilities and equipment sites that are troublesome.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

- c. Walkthroughs - Maintenance personnel can be asked to provide a comprehensive walk through or tour of the plant, equipment or system and describe maintenance problems during the walk through [or examination of the relevant systems]. The walk through will stimulate memories of prior difficulties that maintenance personnel may not recall during interviews. These walkthroughs should be conducted with relevant maintenance specialists such as electrical, mechanical, and I&C to obtain their unique perspectives.
- d. Questionnaires - A formal survey questionnaire can be developed and distributed to maintenance personnel. Using the questionnaire approach, larger sample of personnel can be reached for a given time expenditure. However, there responses may be less detailed than those obtained from a structured interview. The questionnaire may be followed with an abbreviated interview to explore problems noted.

6.6.3.2.10 Acceptance tests. As a condition of acceptance the DOE client should ensure that equipment, subsystems and systems are maintainable to the degree specified in contracts and subcontracts with vendors. Acceptance testing should include reviews of facilities, systems, subsystems and equipment for conformance with maintainability design criteria stipulated at the outset of the plant development process. At this stage, a check should be made to determine whether deficiencies found earlier in maintainability demonstrations and other review methods have been satisfactorily resolved. Final acceptance of vendor-supplied equipment systems and facilities should be deferred until all man-machine interface problems relating to maintainability are corrected.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

INTENTIONALLY BLANK

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

GLOSSARY**Accesses.**

Accesses are places designed to allow the maintainer to perform maintenance actions on equipment or components including entrance doors, apertures, inspection windows, and lubrication, pneumatic, and hydraulic servicing points.

Accessibility.

Accessibility refers to the relative ease with which an assembly or component can be reached for repair, replacement, or servicing. Accessibility guidelines for Americans with disabilities are currently being developed to clarify workplace accessibility requirements for government contractors.

Accessible.

Except where stated to the contrary in this document or where specific design values are given, an item is considered accessible only when it can be operated, manipulated, removed or replaced by the suitably clothed and equipped user with applicable 5th and 95th percentile body dimensions and if the steps required to reach the item are few or simple. Applicable body dimensions are those dimensions which are design-critical to the operation, manipulation, removal or replacement task. (For example, an adjustment control behind an aperture should be located sufficiently close to the aperture to enable a suitably clothed and equipped user with a 5th percentile female depth of reach to grasp and manipulate the adjustment control, while the opening should be sufficiently large to enable passage of similarly clothed 95th percentile male hand and arm dimensions.)

Cables.

Cables refer to a number of wire lines bound together within a single, permanent sheath.

Collating test equipment.

Collating test equipment presents the results of two or more checks as a single display.

Configuring.

Configuring refers to the particular method used to systematically package units or components.

Connector

A connector is any fixture designed and intended to join or connect lines or cables.

Discard task.

Discard tasks are maintenance tasks consisting of discarding and replacing an item before a specified age at which failure becomes substantially more likely.

Equipment failure.

An equipment failure is the cessation of the equipment's ability to meet the minimum performance requirements of the equipment specifications. Further, equipment failure implies that the minimum specified performance cannot be restored through permissible readjustment of operator controls.

Head, external grip.

Head on an item which must be gripped, especially for turning such as a bolt or screw, which is shaped to aid gripping by a tool such as a hexagonal shaped bolt head.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Head, internal grip

Head on an item which must be gripped, usually for turning such as a bolt or screw, which has a feature within the head that allows gripping such as a slot or a hollowed area shaped to fit an Allen wrench.

Laydown area.

A cleared area or space designed for setting down large equipment needing maintenance work; these areas usually are supplied with auxiliary supports or services such as adequate lighting, drains, service air, power outlets, and overhead lift devices.

Layout.

Layout refers to the general arrangement and placement of units and components within a system.

Lines.

Lines refer to any single length of pipe, wire, or tubing.

Maintainability

Maintainability is that characteristic of design and installation which affects the amount of time and cost necessary to repair, test, calibrate, or adjust an item to a specified condition, when using defined procedures and resources.

Maintainability, design for.

This term refers to the preferred phasing or sequencing of maintainability design activities during system development. It is also used to refer to design considerations directed toward achieving those combined characteristics of equipment and facilities which will enable the accomplishment of necessary maintenance quickly, safely, accurately, and effectively with minimum requirements for personnel, skill, special tools and cost.

Maintenance.

Those actions by personnel which function to prevent or correct equipment failure e.g., inspecting, checking, troubleshooting, adjusting, replacing, repairing, and servicing activities.

Maintenance aids.

Maintenance aids refers to informational sources or tools such as procedures, manuals, instructions, flow diagrams, schematics, drawings and decision trees, and, eventually, expert systems, used by maintainers to perform their jobs.

Maintenance, corrective. Maintenance undertaken to rectify equipment failure or degradation of equipment after it has already occurred.

Maintenance information management system.

Refers to a system, typically at least in part computer based, for work scheduling, equipment/system status indicators related to maintenance, fault detection, status of consumables, and other aspects of coordinating maintenance operations used to perform these activities.

Maintenance support equipment.

Maintenance support equipment refers to apparatus which are used for handling, lifting, positioning, towing, fueling, lubricating, and repairing tasks in the performance of maintenance

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Modularization.

Modularization refers to unitized equipment in which the functional units making up a module are integrated and are removed as a unit.

Mounting

Mounting refers to a means of attaching and positioning components.

On-condition tasks.

On condition tasks refer to maintenance tasks undertaken when an inspection indicates that potential system or equipment failure is about to occur or is in the process of occurring (For example, replacing gears when particles in the gearbox oil show that gear failure is eminent).

Preventive maintenance.

Preventive maintenance refers to scheduled tasks taken prior to functional system or equipment failure (including unacceptable performance degradation) to ensure reliable operation.

Protective devices.

Protective devices are devices that reduce the consequence of system or equipment failure. Protective devices work by drawing attention to abnormal conditions (for example, alarms), shutting down failed equipment, eliminating or relieving abnormal conditions (for example, safety valves), taking over from a device that has failed (for example, redundant structural components), and by preventing dangerous situations from arising (for example, guards)

Restoration task.

Restoration tasks are maintenance tasks taken to restore an item to its initial low failure probability rate prior to the item age at which failure becomes substantially more likely, restoration being done regardless of the items condition at that time.

Service points.

Service points are accesses designed to provide a means for adjusting, lubricating, filling, changing, charging, and other service activities on equipment and components.

Software maintenance.

Software or program maintenance is defined as the process of modifying existing operational software to fix errors, to accommodate different operational environments such as new hardware or software platforms, to add new functions and/or improve program efficiency, or to anticipate future problems by making software easier to maintain or modify. It covers system life-cycle phases from change requirements analysis to implementation and documentation of program modification.

Task analysis.

An analytical technique used to determine the different requirement needed to perform a task successfully and efficiently; e.g., displays, controls, tools, environmental conditions, training, time, etc.

Test equipment, automatic.

Automatic test equipment runs two or more tests in sequence without the intervention of a technician. The automatic testing usually stops when the first out-of tolerance signal is detected.

Test equipment, built in.

Built in test equipment is an integral part of the equipment it is designed to test.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

Test equipment, go, no-go.

Go, no-go test equipment only tells whether a given signal or test result is in or out of tolerance.

Test points.

Test points are accesses designed to provide a means for conveniently and safely determining the operational status of equipment and isolating malfunctions.

Torque.

A turning or twisting force; for example, the amount of force required to turn a valve.

Unitization.

Unitization refers to separating equipment into physically and functionally distinct units to allow for easy removal and replacement.

Validation.

The operation of assuring that a procedure can actually be used to perform the designated maintenance tasks accurately and efficiently under the operational conditions of interest. The term may also be used for any operation to assure that some aspect of maintenance can be performed; for example, that a new system actually has the required maintainability.

Verification.

The operations of assuring that a procedure actually meets human factors design standards, e.g. it is technically accurate, uses commonly accepted terminology accurately, is formatted according to human factors standards, etc.

Zone banding.

Use of pattern or color coding to show a critical range(s) on a scale; for example, normal operating range or a danger zone which may lead to equipment malfunction.

DOE-HDBK-1140-2001

CONCLUDING MATERIAL

Review Activity:

DOE

DP

EH

EH

NE

SR

Field Offices

AL

ID

OR

RL

Preparing Activity:

DOE-EH-52

Project Number:

HFAC-0012

National Laboratories

LANL

Area Offices

RL
